# Oracle® Retail AI Foundation Cloud Services: AI Foundation User Guide



Release 23.1.101.0 F76696–04 March 2023

ORACLE

Oracle Retail AI Foundation Cloud Services: AI Foundation User Guide, Release 23.1.101.0

F76696-04

Copyright © 2023, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Primary Author: Judith Meskill

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software, software documentation, data (as defined in the Federal Acquisition Regulation), or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, then the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs (including any operating system, integrated software, any programs embedded, installed, or activated on delivered hardware, and modifications of such programs) and Oracle computer documentation or other Oracle data delivered to or accessed by U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software," "commercial computer software documentation," or "limited rights data" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, the use, reproduction, duplication, release, display, disclosure, modification, preparation of derivative works, and/or adaptation of i) Oracle programs (including any operating system, integrated software, any programs embedded, installed, or activated on delivered hardware, and modifications of such programs), ii) Oracle computer documentation and/or iii) other Oracle data, is subject to the rights and limitations specified in the license contained in the applicable contract. The terms governing the U.S. Government's use of Oracle cloud services are defined by the applicable contract for such services. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle®, Java, and MySQL are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Inside are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Epyc, and the AMD logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information about content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services unless otherwise set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services, except as set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle.

### Contents

#### Send Us Your Comments

#### Preface

Audience	xiii
Documentation Accessibility	xiii
Related Documents	xiii
Customer Support	xiv
Improved Process for Oracle Retail AI Foundation Documentation Corrections	xiv
Oracle Retail AI Foundation Documentation on the Oracle Help Center	xiv
Conventions	XV

#### 1 Getting Started

About Oracle Retail AI Foundation Cloud Services	1-1
Administration	1-1
Oracle Retail AI Foundation Dashboard	1-1
Process	1-3
Overview of the User Interface	1-8
Process Train	1-8
View Menu	1-8
Embedded Help	1-8
Process Indicator	1-8
Search	1-8
Icons	1-8
Buttons	1-10
Browser Settings	1-10
Supported Characters for Text Entry	1-11
Histograms	1-11

#### 2 Customer Decision Trees

Introduction
--------------

2-1



Overview of CDT Process	2-1
Overview Tab	2-2
CDT Generation Stage Status	2-2
Aggregate Statistics	2-3
Calculation Report	2-4
CDT Score Distribution Histogram	2-6
Generate CDT Tab	2-8
Data Setup	2-8
Category Selections	2-9
Time Interval Setup	2-11
Data Filtering	2-11
Filter Setup	2-12
Data Filtering Summary	2-13
Data Filtering Histograms	2-14
Calculation	2-15
Version Setup	2-16
Category Attributes Setup	2-17
Calculation Report	2-19
CDT Score Distribution Histogram	2-20
Evaluation	2-21
Pruning Setup	2-21
Pruning Results	2-22
Evaluation Report	2-23
Evaluation Histograms	2-24
Escalation	2-25
Setup Escalation	2-26
Escalation Report	2-27
Completion of Process	2-28
Manage CDTs Tab	2-28
Browse by Category or Version	2-30
Search	2-30
Create CDT	2-30
Deleting a CDT	2-31
Using the CDT Editor	2-31
Add a Child	2-31
Editing Nodes	2-32
Deleting Nodes	2-32
Copying/Pasting in Customer Decision Tree Editor	2-32
Viewing a Customer Decision Tree	2-32
Comparing Two CDTs	2-33



### 3 Demand Transference

Introduction	3-1
Overview of DT Process	3-1
Overview Tab	3-1
Generation Stage Status	3-2
Aggregate Statistics	3-3
Calculation Report	3-4
Generate Models Tab	3-5
Data Setup	3-5
Category Selections	3-5
Data Filtering	3-7
Filter Setup	3-8
Data Filter Summary	3-8
Data Filtering Histograms	3-9
Similarity Calculation	3-11
Version Setup	3-11
Category Attribute Setup	3-12
Transaction-Based Similarity Availability Per Category	3-14
Similarity Display	3-14
Elasticity Calculation	3-15
Calculation Report	3-16
Pruning Report	3-17
Assortment Elasticity Histogram	3-17
Escalation	3-18
Setup Escalation	3-19
Escalation Report	3-20
Completion of Process	3-21
Manage Models Tab	3-21
Time Interval Setup	3-22
Calculate Substitutable Demand Percentages	3-23
Browsing and Searching	3-23
Escalation Report	3-24
Histogram	3-25

#### 4 Advanced Clustering

Introduction	4-1
Features	4-1
Overview of Advanced Clustering Process	4-2
Cluster Criteria Overview Tab	4-2
Clustering Criteria	4-3



Generate Store Clusters Tab	4-4
Cluster Criteria Stage	4-4
All Cluster Criteria	4-5
All Cluster Criteria Filter	4-6
All Cluster Criteria Summary	4-6
All Cluster Criteria Scenario List	4-7
Cluster Criteria	4-7
Effective Period	4-9
Summarization	4-9
Source Time Period	4-10
Contextual Area	4-10
Explore Data	4-12
Summary	4-12
View Stores	4-13
Product Performance	4-13
Contextual Area	4-14
Cluster Setup Stage	4-17
Summary	4-17
Scenario Definition Section	4-18
Cluster Results Stage	4-22
Summary	4-22
Scenario Results Section	4-23
Export to Excel	4-27
Scenario List	4-28
Scenario Compare	4-28
Scenario System Recommendations	4-29
Scenario Optimality	4-30
Scenario Rank	4-30
Outlier Indicator	4-30
Cluster Scores	4-30
New Stores and Stores with a Poor History	4-31
Insights Stage	4-31
Summary	4-33
Contextual Information	4-33
Manage Store Clusters Tab	4-33
Contextual Information	4-34
Scenario Compare	4-37
Attribute Analysis	4-37
Cluster Overrides	4-38
Rename Cluster	4-38
Create New Manual Cluster	4-39



Delete Cluster	4-40
Move Stores to Clusters	4-40
Cluster Review, Approve, and Adjust	4-40
Nested vs. Mixed Attribute	4-41
Nested	4-41
Mixed Attributes	4-42

### 5 Customer Segmentation

Introduction	5-1
Features	5-1
Overview of the Customer Segmentation Process	5-2
Customer Segmentation Overview Tab	5-2
Segmentation Criteria	5-3
Version List Tab	5-4
Version Actions	5-4
Version Criteria Pop-up	5-5
Source Time Period	5-6
Top Categories	5-7
Generate Customer Segments Tab	5-7
Segment Criteria Stage	5-8
All Segment Criteria	5-8
All Segment Criteria Filter	5-9
All Segment Criteria Summary	5-10
All Segment Criteria Scenario List	5-11
Segment Criteria	5-11
Effective Period	5-12
Summarization	5-13
Source Time Period	5-13
Contextual Area	5-13
Explore Data	5-14
Summary	5-15
Attribute Mining	5-15
Attribute Importance	5-15
Attribute Correlation	5-17
Filter	5-17
Correlation Matrix	5-18
Contextual Area	5-18
Segment Setup Stage	5-19
Scenario Definition Tab	5-20
Scenario List Tab	5-23



Scenario Compare Tab	5-24
Segment Results Stage	5-24
Summary	5-25
Scenario Results Section	5-25
Scenario List	5-29
Scenario Compare	5-30
Scenario System Recommendations	5-31
Scenario Optimality	5-31
Scenario Rank	5-32
Outlier Indicator	5-32
Segment Rules	5-32
Segment Scores	5-33
New Customers	5-33
Generate Store Profile	5-33
Segment Insights Stage	5-33
Customer Segment Analysis	5-34
Category Analysis	5-34
Opportunity Analysis Tab	5-35
Summary	5-37
Cross Segment Spend and Margin Analysis BI	5-37
RFM Analysis BI	5-38
Customer Segment vs. All Customer Sales Trends BI	5-39
Customer Attribute Analysis BI	5-39
Category Analysis BI	5-40
Trend Category Analysis BI	5-41

#### 6 Attribute Extraction

Introduction	6-1
Overview Tab	6-1
Edit Labels Tab	6-2
Annotation Tab	6-3
Unigraphs	6-3
Assigning User Labels and Reviewing Machine Labels	6-3
Finding New Values	6-5
Digraphs	6-6
Assigning User Labels to Digraphs	6-6
Errors Tab	6-7
Normalization Tab	6-8
Results Tab	6-11



Status

### 7 Affinity Analysis

Introduction	7-1
User Interface	7-2
Assortment Recommender	7-5
Using Assortment Recommender Results	7-9
Market Basket Analysis	7-10
Using Market Basket Rules	7-15
Affinity Analysis	7-16
Affinity Analysis Overview	7-16
Compare Results	7-24
Create Custom Run	7-26
Manage Affinity Analysis	7-28
Compare Results	7-29

### 8 Size Profiles

Overview	8-1
Navigation	8-1
All Runs	8-1
Creating a Run	8-2
Information Tab	8-3
Size Ranges Tab	8-3
Parameters Tab	8-5
Reviewing a Run	8-6
Run Output	8-6
Size Profiles Tab	8-6
Input Tab	8-9
Graphics	8-9
Submitting a Run	8-10
Approved Profiles	8-10
Approved Profiles Table	8-10
Assigned Tasks	8-11
Assigned Tasks Table	8-12
Submitted Profiles	8-12

#### 9 Innovation Workbench

Process	9-1
Workspace List	9-1

SQL Workshop	9-2
Application Builder	9-6
Manage Notebook	9-6
Features	9-6

### 10 Oracle Digital Assistance

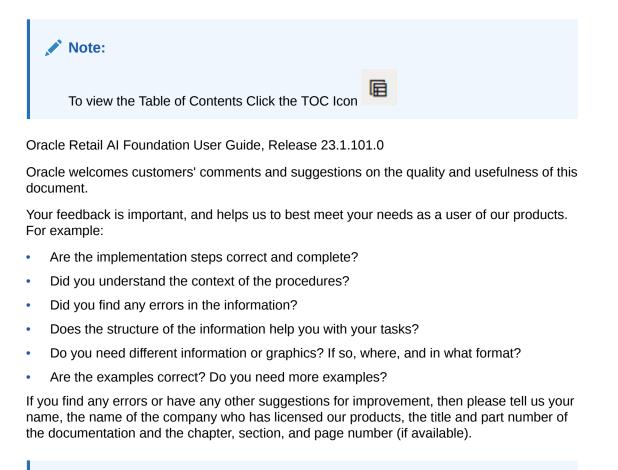
Transactional Digital Assistance	10-1
Q&A Digital Assistance	10-1
Voice Component	10-3

#### 11 Control & Tactical Center

Strategy & Policy Management	11-1
Manage Forecast Configurations	11-2
Overview	11-3
Setup	11-3
Create a Run Type	11-5
Data Aggregation	11-6
Add Multiple Run Types	11-7
Delete Run Type	11-7
Test	11-8
Create What-If Run	11-10
Duplicate Run	11-13
Delete Run	11-13
Approve Demand Parameters	11-14
Approve Base Demand and Forecast	11-14
Manage	11-14
Мар	11-15
Manage Master Data	11-16
Manage Credential Stores	11-19
Attribute Extraction and Attribute Binning	11-20

#### Glossary

### Send Us Your Comments



#### Note:

Before sending us your comments, you might like to check that you have the latest version of the document and if any concerns are already addressed. To do this, access the Online Documentation available on the Oracle Help Center It contains the most current Documentation Library plus all documents revised or released recently.

Send your comments to us using the electronic mail address: retail-doc\_us@oracle.com

Please give your name, address, electronic mail address, and telephone number (optional).

If you need assistance with Oracle software, then please contact your support representative or Oracle Support Services.



If you require training or instruction in using Oracle software, then please contact your Oracle local office and inquire about our Oracle University offerings. A list of Oracle offices is available on our Web site at http://www.oracle.com.



### Preface

This guide describes the Oracle Retail AI Foundation Cloud Services user interface. It provides step-by-step instructions to complete most tasks that can be performed through the application.

### Audience

This User Guide is intended for retailers and analysts.

### **Documentation Accessibility**

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website at <a href="http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc">http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc</a>.

#### Access to Oracle Support

Oracle customers that have purchased support have access to electronic support through My Oracle Support. For information, visit <a href="http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=trs">http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=trs</a> if you are hearing impaired.

### **Related Documents**

For more information, see the following documents in the Oracle Retail AI Foundation Cloud Services documentation set:

- Oracle Retail AI Foundation Cloud Services Administration Guide
- Oracle Retail AI Foundation Cloud Services Implementation Guide
- Oracle Retail AI Foundation Cloud Services Security Guide
- Oracle Retail AI Foundation Cloud Services Release Notes
- Oracle Retail Analytics and Planning Cloud Services Data Interface
- Oracle Retail AI Foundation Cloud Services User Guide
- Oracle Retail AI Foundation Cloud Services Assortment and Space Optimization User Guide
- Oracle Retail AI Foundation Cloud Services Inventory Optimization User Guide
- Oracle Retail AI Foundation Cloud Services Promotion Markdown and Offer Optimization User Guide



### **Customer Support**

To contact Oracle Customer Support, access My Oracle Support at the following URL:

https://support.oracle.com

When contacting Customer Support, please provide the following:

- Product version and program/module name
- Functional and technical description of the problem (include business impact)
- Detailed step-by-step instructions to re-create
- Exact error message received
- Screen shots of each step you take

### Improved Process for Oracle Retail AI Foundation Documentation Corrections

To more quickly address critical corrections to Oracle Retail AI Foundation documentation content, Oracle Retail AI Foundation documentation may be republished whenever a critical correction is needed. For critical corrections, the republication of an Oracle Retail AI Foundation document may at times not be attached to a numbered software release; instead, the Oracle Retail AI Foundation document will simply be replaced on the Oracle Help Center Web site, or, in the case of Data Models, to the applicable My Oracle Support Documentation container where they reside.

Oracle Retail AI Foundation documentation is available on the Oracle Help Center at the following URL:

https://docs.oracle.com/en/industries/retail/index.html

An updated version of the applicable Oracle AI Foundation document is indicated by Oracle part number, as well as print date (month and year). An updated version uses the same part number, with a higher-numbered suffix. For example, part number E123456-02 is an updated version of a document with part number E123456-01.

If a more recent version of a document is available, that version supersedes all previous versions.

# Oracle Retail AI Foundation Documentation on the Oracle Help Center

Oracle Retail AI Foundation product documentation is available on the following web site:

https://docs.oracle.com/en/industries/retail/index.html

(Data Model documents are not available through Oracle Help Center. You can obtain these documents through My Oracle Support.)



### Conventions

The following text conventions are used in this document:

Convention	Meaning
boldface	Boldface type indicates graphical user interface elements associated with an action, or terms defined in text or the glossary.
italic	Italic type indicates book titles, emphasis, or placeholder variables for which you supply particular values.
monospace	Monospace type indicates commands within a paragraph, URLs, code in examples, text that appears on the screen, or text that you enter.



## 1 Getting Started

This chapter provides an overview of Oracle Retail AI Foundation Cloud Services.

### About Oracle Retail AI Foundation Cloud Services

The Oracle Retail AI Foundation Cloud Services is an analytical product that consists of the following modules: Customer Decision Tree Science Cloud Service, Demand Transference Science Cloud Service, Advanced Clustering Cloud Service, Customer Segmentation, Promotion Markdown and Offer Optimization Cloud Service, and Assortment and Space Optimization Cloud Service. You may have access to all of these modules or to a subset of them.

### Administration

For information about the administration of Oracle Retail AI Foundation Cloud Services, see Oracle Retail AI Foundation Cloud Services Administration Guide.

### Oracle Retail AI Foundation Dashboard

The dashboard provides access to all Oracle Retail AI Foundation modules. The main tasks associated with each module are listed in the panel on the left, as shown in the following figure. Each module has its own tab.



### Tasks Q Dashboard **ORASE** Dashboard Sustomer Decision Tree **CDT** Overview Generate CDTs Manage CDTs Advanced Store Clustering Advanced Store Clustering Overview Generate Store Clusters Manage Store Cluster Customer Segmentation Customer Segmentation Overview Generate Customer Segment Demand Transference DT Overview Generate Models Manage Models Assortment and Space Optimization **Optimization List** Assortment List Execute Space Optimization Assortment Mapping

Figure 1-1 Oracle Retail AI Foundation Tasks



### Process

This guide contains a chapter for each of the modules with detailed instructions. In general, each module contains a set of tabs, including an overview tab and tabs to use the module functionality.

#### **Customer Decision Tree**

The CDT overview tab is shown in following figure.

							CDT Sc	ore Distri	bution	
A CDT (		tion S	tage Statu	S			(	Binnir Algorith		idth 👻
View •	3	62					Ϋ́.	Algorita		
Stage Name		Start I	Date	End Date	Stage Status					
Dat	ta Setup				Not Started					
Data I	Filtering				Not Started					
Cal	culation				Not Started			No data to	display	
Ev	aluation				Not Started					
Es	calation				Not Started	1	-			
Aggre	egate S	tatisti	cs				Number of	Bins: 7	62	
Calcu	lation F	Repor	t				View -	🛃 De	tach	
							Category Name	Location Name	Custome Segment Name	
							No data to	dienlav		

Figure 1-2 CDT Overview Tab

When you use the CDT Cloud Service module, you following this general iterative process to create and manage CDTs:

- Setup. You define the domain of calculation by selecting the categories and time frame for the calculation of the CDTs.
- Data Filtering. You configure filters that remove input data that might cause errors in the calculation or that might lead to inaccurate or unreliable answers.
- Calculation. You calculate a specific version of a CDT. Different versions of the CDT based on different configurations can be calculated and compared.
- Evaluation. You examine the results of the calculation and determine the reliability and accuracy of the answers. You can prune inaccurate or unreliable results.



Escalation. When you are satisfied with the results, you can set the escalation path to fill in the holes for partitions whose CDTs were removed during pruning by setting up a search path through the segment hierarchy and the location hierarchy. Then, you can set a version of a CDT as complete.

Within each stage, you set the required parameters. In some stages, once you do that you click **Run** to initiate the process. To determine when a run is complete, go to the Overview tab and click the **Refresh** icon in order to see the current status of each stage. If you make changes to a stage, you must re-run that stage and all the relevant stages that follow it as the results of those stages are made invalid by the changes you made.

#### **Demand Transference**

The DT overview tab is shown in the following figure..

Gene	ration S	stage	Statu	S					
View *	B	62							
itage lame		Start [	Date			End Date	Stage Sta	itus	
Dat	a Setup						Not Starte	d	
Data I	Filtering						Not Starte	d	
s	imilarity						Not Starte	d	
E	lasticity						Not Starte	d	
Es	calation						Not Starte	d	
Aggre	egate S	tatisti	cs						
View •	₽	62							
ersion				Created User	Ву	Distinct Categories	Distinct Locations	Distinct Customer Segments	Number of models generated

#### Figure 1-3 DT Overview

When you use the DT Cloud Service module, you follow this general iterative process to create and manage DT models:

- Data Setup. You define the categories to be used in the DT calculation.
- Data Filtering. You configure filters that remove input data that might cause errors in the calculation or that might lead to inaccurate or unreliable results.
- Similarity Calculation. You calculate similarities and assess the results of the calculation.



- Elasticity Calculation. You calculate the assortment elasticities and assess the results in terms of substitutable demand, which is the percentage of demand of a SKU that is retained when the SKU is deleted from the stores where it is selling.
- Escalation. When you are satisfied with your results, you can set the escalation path to fill in the holes for partitions whose DT models were removed during pruning by setting up a search path through the segment hierarchy and the location hierarchy. Then you can set a version of the DT model as complete.
- Manage Models. Use this tab to set time intervals for evaluating your results and to override the value for the maximum substitutable demand percentage.

#### **Advanced Clustering**

The AC overview tab is shown in the following figure.

Name     Cluster By     Created By     Last Update By	Vie	w - Fo	rmat •	62	Q		[[]]		-al-				
Name Cluster By Created By Updat	/									at a			
		Name						Cluster By				ed By	Last Update By
No data to display.													

#### Figure 1-4 Advanced Clustering Overview Tab

To use Advanced Clustering, follow this general process to create and manage clusters, working in the Generate Store Clusters tab and the Manage Store Clusters tab:



- Cluster Criteria. View all available clusters for specified merchandise, location, and calendar. Review cluster criteria or scenario details for each cluster. Use an existing cluster as the basis for creating a new cluster.
- Explore Data. Examine the input data for the cluster. Review multiple data points and significant attributes using the contextual information.
- Cluster Setup. Define multiple what-if scenarios. Such scenarios can be compared with one another throughout the clustering process.
- Cluster Results. View the scenario results and compare scenarios.
- Cluster Insights. Gain an understanding about cluster results and cluster performance prior to approval by examining the contextual information.
- Manage Store Clusters. Manage existing cluster criteria. Perform manual overrides and approve clusters.

#### **Customer Segmentation**

The Customer Segmentation overview tab is shown in the following figure.

#### Figure 1-5 Customer Segmentation Overview Tab

View	/ * Format *	62	Q 🔤		4		
1						•	
1	lame			Segment E	ly	Created By	Last Updat By
No d	ata to display.						
No d	ita to display.						
No d	ata to display.						
No d	ita to display.						
No d	ita to display.						
No d	ita to display.						
No d	ita to display.						
No d	ita to display.						
No d	ita to display.						
No d	ita to display.						
No d	ita to display.						
No d	ita to display.						



To use Customer Segmentation, follow this general process to create segments, working in the Generate Customer Segment tab:

- Segment Criteria View all available segments for the specified merchandise, location, and calendar. Review the segment criteria or scenario details for each segment. Use an existing segment as the basis for creating a new segment.
- Explore Data Examine attributes and their summaries for the segment. Review multiple significant attributes and their correlations using the contextual information.
- Segment Setup Define multiple what-if scenarios. Such scenarios can be compared with one another throughout the segmentation process.
- Segment Results View the scenario results and compare scenarios.
- Segment Insights Gain an understanding of segment results and segment performance prior to approval by examining the contextual information.

#### **Assortment and Space Optimization**

The ASO overview tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 1-6 ASO Overview Tab

Ac	tions • View •	Format 🔹 📲	• "! % 🛃	Freeze 🛃 Detac	h 🚽 Wrap	62
1					•	
	Run Name	Created By	Planogram Set	Location Level	Run Status	Sta
	data to display.					



ASO is used to optimize a category manager's assortment plan by creating optimal planograms. The category manager creates a preliminary assortment and wants to determine how well that list of products can fit in stores, given the available space, product sizes, and merchandising goals, constraints, and rules. The application creates virtual planograms that organize products onto fixtures in a way that best achieves the optimization objectives. Once the manager finalizes the optimization results, the product level data can be exported for use in planning applications.

### Overview of the User Interface

The user interface includes functionality described in this section.

#### **Process Train**

You can use the process train to navigate through the stages of each module. You can also use the **Back** button and the **Next** button to move through the train. The color changes for each stage once you visit that stage. Certain stages require you to run that stage before you can go to the next stage.

#### View Menu

The View Menu provides access to a variety of functionality that you can use to customize the display of the tables in the user interface.

#### Embedded Help

Embedded help, which you access by clicking the **Question Mark** icon, provides additional information about the type of details required by certain fields.

#### **Process Indicator**

At the top of the user interface, in the right-hand corner, is a process indicator that you can use to monitor the status of a user action such as clicking **Next** to go to the next stage.

#### Search

In certain cases, you can customize your search, using advanced search capabilities to specify the search criteria.

#### lcons

The following icons are used in the user interface.

Table 1-1 Icons Used in the User Interface

lcon	Icon Name	Icon Description
4	Add	Add a category for CDT or DT. Add a cluster in Advanced Clustering. Create new scenarios in Advanced Clustering.



lcon	Icon Name	Icon Description
	Approve Version	Approve a version of a CDT.
	Calculate	Initiate calculation of substitutable demand percentages in DT.
=	Compare Two CDTs	Look at two CDTs side-by-side in the CDT Editor.
<b>v</b>	Complete	Indicates the CDT is ready to be activated.
×	Delete an entry in a table. Delete a scenario in Clustering.	Delete.
7	Detach	Detach the table from the user interface for better viewing.
IJ	Duplicate	Make a copy of a scenario.
1	Edit	Edit the category attributes (CDT and DT)
Θ	Embedded Help	Indicates that embedded help is available for the adjacent field.
	Execute	Execute the scenario.
B	Export to Excel	Export the selected data to Excel.
ΤĒ	Go To Top	Adjusts table display.
Ē	Go Up	Adjusts table display.
×	No	Indicates No in Advanced Clustering.
	Query By Example	Provides access to a text entry field at the top of each column that you can use to search for data by an initial set of characters.
62	Refresh	Update the table display or the stage status.
9	Revert	Reverts the DT calculation.
	Save	Save the scenario.
60	See Similarities	See similarities in DT Similarities Display.
<b>v</b>	Set Version As Complete	Set a CDT version as complete.
1	Select Date	Access a calendar in order to select a specific date.

 Table 1-1
 (Cont.) Icons Used in the User Interface



lcon	Icon Name	Icon Description	
<sup>1</sup>	Show As Top	Adjusts table display.	
60	View One CDT	Access a CDT in the CDT Editor.	
8	Withdraw From Approved Version	Un-approve a version of a CDT.	
1	Yes	Acts as an indication that something exists in Advanced Clustering.	

Table 1-1 (Cont.) Icons Used in the User Interface

#### **Buttons**

Buttons are used for navigation and to perform certain actions.

Table 1-2 B	uttons
-------------	--------

Name	Description	
Action	Provides access to Save, Approve, and Reject.	
Advanced	Provides access to advanced search functionality.	
Approve	Used to approve a CDT or a cluster.	
Back	Used to navigate the process train.	
Cancel	Cancels the action.	
Complete	Used to make a CDT or DT model active.	
Next	Moves to the next stage.	
Reject	Used to navigate the process train.	
Reset	Resets the values to the original ones.	
Run	Initiates a run.	
Search	Provides access to search functionality.	
Stop	Stops a process.	

### **Browser Settings**

The supported browsers include Mozilla Firefox 68+ ESR, Google Chrome (Desktop) 79+, and Microsoft Edge 44+.

#### **Concurrent Browser Sessions**

Users should not log into more than one browser session at the same time using the same user name.



#### Localization

The default language for the application is English. If you are using a different language on your computer, you should adjust the language settings on your browser as appropriate.

### Supported Characters for Text Entry

The following characters are valid for text input: all letters, all numbers, and the following characters: '\_', '#', '%', '\*', '\$', ' ', ', & '-'

### Histograms

Certain stages have associated histograms that can help you analyze the data presented in that stage. You can adjust the way the histogram presents the data in two ways. You can select the number of bins that are used to display the data. In addition, you can select how the bins are defined: Equiwidth or Custom. Each of these options uses a specific algorithm to determine how the bins are defined.

The Equiwidth approach takes the minimum and maximum values in a set of numbers and divides that range into equally sized bins. For example, using the numbers from 1 to 100 with 10 bins, the histogram shows bins for 1-10, 11-20, and so on. If specific bins have no value represented (for example, if all the values are in the range of 1-10 and 91-100), then the histogram will not show that bin in the UI. Additionally, the histogram data series ranges are shown using the actual minimum and maximum values for each of the bins. So rather than showing a range of 1-10, if the only value available was a 5, then the range for the first bin would appear as 5-5. In the Custom approach, each of the bins has an equal number of values represented, while the minimum and maximum number associated with the bin is adjusted. However, the bins are defined using distinct values instead of all the available values. The bins may or may not be of equal height, depending on how diverse the numbers are.

The two approaches differ in that the Custom approach only shows fewer bins than requested if there are fewer distinct values than what was requested for the number of bins.

The two approaches are similar in that both handle the Min/Max value display in a similar manner, using actual data values that are associated with the bin.

To determine which approach to use, you should consider what type of data you are trying to see and the amount of detail you want. For example, if you are trying to set a data filter value, and you want to do so using a common value, you may be able to see where most of the data falls using one of the algorithms, while the other algorithm may help you pinpoint a specific value within the range. The Equiwidth approach is negatively affected by values that are at the extreme ends of a value being binned. This can cause the majority of the data values to appear in a single bin. The Custom approach puts a greater emphasis on a value that is repeatedly found in a dataset. Depending on the values being charted, you may find that one of the approaches presents better data than the other approach.



# 2 Customer Decision Trees

This chapter describes the use of the Customer Decision Tree Science Cloud Service module.

### Introduction

A customer decision tree is a decision support tool that uses a tree-like graph to model a customer hierarchical decision-making process for a specific product. The branches of the tree provide a visual representation of the choices a customer makes and the order of importance of various product characteristics. Transaction data is used in the analysis.

A customer decision tree identifies the decisions a customer makes when choosing a particular product. The decision tree is produced by algorithms that analyze historical customer sales data. It illustrates how customers shop and how they evaluate the importance of different product attributes when making buying decisions. Such information can be useful to a retailer in terms of product selection and display.

The CDT Cloud Service module consists of three tabs: Overview, Generate CDTs, and Manage CDTs. You use the Overview tab to keep track of the status of each stage within the Generate CDTs tab. You use the Manage CDTs tab to assess the set of CDTs you and other users have created using the Generate CDTs tab, setting versions as complete, approving versions, and deleting versions, as necessary.

#### **Overview of CDT Process**

When you use the CDT Cloud Service module, you follow this general iterative process to create and manage CDTs:

- Setup. You define the domain of calculation by selecting the categories and time frame for the calculation of the CDTs.
- Data Filtering. You configure filters that remove input data that might cause errors in the calculation or that might lead to inaccurate or unreliable answers.
- Calculation. You calculate a specific version of a CDT. Different versions of the CDT based on different configurations can be calculated and compared.
- Evaluation. You examine the results of the calculation and determine the reliability and accuracy of the answers. You can prune inaccurate or unreliable results.
- Escalation. When you are satisfied with the results, you can set the escalation path to fill in the holes for partitions whose CDTs were removed during pruning by setting up a search path through the segment hierarchy and the location hierarchy. Then, you can set a version of a CDT as complete.

Within each stage, you set the required parameters. In some stages, once you do that you click **Run** to initiate the process. To determine when a run is complete, go to the Overview tab and click the **Refresh** icon in order to see the current status of each stage. If you make changes to a stage, you must re-run that stage and all the relevant stages that follow it as the results of those stages are made invalid by the changes you made.



### **Overview Tab**

The Overview tab displays information that you can view and use to monitor the progress of the CDT stages as well as to view some aggregate statistics and the CDT results from the last successful run.

This tab contains the following sections:

- CDT Generation Stage Status
- Aggregate Statistics
- CDT Calculation Report
- CDT Score Distribution

#### **CDT** Generation Stage Status

The CDT Generation Stage Status table displays the status of each of the CDT stages.

Click the **Refresh** icon to update the fields and see the latest status for each stage.

In cases where the status is either Failed or Stopped/Paused, or the run never completes, you should consult the database logs in RSE\_LOG\_MSG as well as the WebLogic console logs in your WebLogic domain in order to troubleshoot the problem.

#### Figure 2-1 CDT Generation Stage Status

View -	3	ଟିଥ			7
Stage Name	el.	Start Date	End Date	Stage Status	λ.
Da	ta Setup	2013-11-18 05:48:	2013-11-18 05:49:	Completed Successfully	
Data	Filtering	2013-11-18 05:49:	2013-11-18 05:50:	Completed Successfully	
Ca	Iculation	2013-11-11 09:40:	2013-11-11 09:46:3	Not Started	
Ev	aluation	2013-11-10 12:22:	2013-11-10 12:22:	Not Started	
Es	calation			Not Started	

You can use the status information to monitor the progress of each stage. It contains the following fields, which can be arranged and viewed, but not modified.

Table 2-1	CDT Generation Stage Status Fields	
-----------	------------------------------------	--

Field Name	Description
Stage Name	A row exists in the table for each CDT stage that provides detailed status information. The five stages are Setup, Data Filtering, Calculation, Evaluation, and Escalation.
Start Date	The date and time when a run for the stage most recently started.
End Date	The date and time when a run for the stage most recently ended.



Field Name	Description
Stage Status	The current status of the stage: Not Started, Not Started (Scheduled for Later), Processing, Completed Successfully, Completed with Errors, Stopped/Paused, Cancelled, or Failed.

Table 2-1	(Cont.) CDT	Generation Stage Status Fields
-----------	-------------	--------------------------------

The following provides an explanation of the different values for the status of a stage.

Stage Status	Description
Not Started	This indicates that the stage has not yet been initiated. This can occur when you first begin to create a CDT or when you update an existing version.
Not Started (Scheduled for Later)	The stage is scheduled to start after the previous stage is complete.
Processing	This indicates that the stage is currently being processed.
Stopped/Paused	This indicates either that the stage has been stopped by the application or that the user has chosen to stop the process (for example, to make a change to an option). In the latter case, once any background processing has stopped, the user can re-run the stopped stage.
Completed Successfully	This indicates that the stage has been successfully processed.
Completed with Errors	This indicates that the stage was able to complete the processing of all requested CDTs, but one or more CDTs encountered errors during the run and were not able to complete successfully. This most commonly occurs when the data used for a CDT is not available or is too sparse to produce a result.
Failed	This indicates that a problem occurred during the processing. If the failure occurred during the Calculation stage, and only a few CDT results did not produce a CDT score, then the user can continue without those results since pruning will remove them. If the failure occurred during any of the other stages, the user must re-run the stage.
Cancelled	This indicates that the database has cancelled the execution of the stage either because of missing data or an exception. The user should review the RSE_LOG_MSG log to determine the problem.

Table 2-2 Status Explanations

### Aggregate Statistics

The Aggregate Statistics table displays statistical details about the existing CDT versions.

Click the **Refresh** icon to update the fields and see the latest information in this table.

View - 🚱							B   /
Version Name	Creation User	Distinct Category Selections	Distinct Locations	Distinct Customer Seaments	Start Date	End Date	Average Score
Coffee CS Brand	cdmUser0	1	1	6	1/4/2010	1/1/2012	68.02
Coffee CS Brand S	S cdmUser0	1	1	6	1/4/2010	1/1/2012	73.62
Coffee CS Brand S	S cdmUser0	1	1	6	1/4/2010	1/1/2012	76.61
Coffee CS Brand S	S cdmUser0	1	1	6	1/4/2010	1/1/2012	76.39
Coffee CS Initial	cdmUser0	1	1	6	1/4/2010	1/1/2012	69.61
Smoke Test	cdtUser0	1	10	1	1/4/2010	1/1/2012	70.85

#### Figure 2-2 CDT Aggregate Statistics

Each existing version has a row in the table. The table contains the following fields, which can be arranged and viewed, but not modified.

Table 2-3	Aggregate	<b>Statistics Fields</b>
-----------	-----------	--------------------------

Field Name	Description
Version Name	User-created name that identifies this CDT version. The name must be unique to the user.
Creation User	The login name of the person who created this version.
Distinct Category Selections	The number of categories associated with this version.
Distinct Locations	The number of locations associated with this version.
Distinct Customer Segments	The number of customer segments associated with this version.
Start Date	The beginning date associated with the CDTs in this version.
End Date	The end date associated with the CDTs in this version.
Average Score	The average of the CDT scores for a version. A CDT score ranges from 0 to 100. A higher value indicates a better score.

#### **Calculation Report**

The Calculation Report displays the CDT results for the indicated version from the last successful run, if one has occurred.

Here you can review information by Location or by Customer Segment. You can also set a version as complete, view and edit a CDT, or compare two CDTs.

Click the **Refresh** icon to update the fields and see the latest information in this table.



	By Location	S Brand Seg SubCat Browse By Custome	er Segment					
View +	✓ 60 11	<b>B</b>					7	1 퍼 프 1
		Pruned	Total customer IDs	Total weeks of sales	CDT score	Creation Date		Creation User
Coffee								

#### Figure 2-3 CDT Calculate Report

The Calculation Report contains the following fields:

Table 2-4 Calculation Report Fields

Field Name	Description
Partition	A partition is the combination of category, segment, and location. The column identifies the names of all nodes in the tree structure in the table. The node type may be either category, location, or customer segment.
Pruned	The number of CDTs removed from the list of usable CDTs. CDTs are removed that do not meet the filtering thresholds. During the Escalation stage, the escalation process makes adjustments for the CDTs that are removed.
Total Customer IDs	The number of customers used in the calculation of the CDT.
Total Weeks of Sales	The total number of weeks of sales used in the calculation of the CDT. This provides an indication of the amount of sales data used in the calculation. All the CDTs in a given version should have a similar value; if this is not the case, the results should be evaluated.
CDT Score	A confidence score assigned to help in assessing the quality of the CDT. A CDT score ranges from 0 to 100. A higher value indicates a better score.
Creation Date	The date when the version whose data is displayed was created.
Creation User	The login name of the user who created the version.

The following icons are available for the Calculation Report:

#### Set Version as Complete

Each partition must have an active CDT. The active CDT is used by other applications that require a CDT.

All CDTs within a version are activated when you click **Set Version as Complete**.

If a CDT exists in more than one version, then the most recently activated version takes precedence.

If a version contains multiple categories and is Complete and then a different version with a partial overlap of categories is later marked as Complete, only the overlapping categories are replaced in the new version.



If a version is overwritten, then the CDTs in that version are no longer active.

When a CDT is at risk of going from active to inactive, you will see a warning message.

To determine whether or not a CDT is active, go to the Manage CDTs tab. The Browse by Categories or by Versions table displays a flag that indicates whether or not a CDT is active.

#### **View One CDT**

This icon provides access to the CDT Editor. For details about this functionality, see Using the CDT Editor.

#### **Compare Two CDTs**

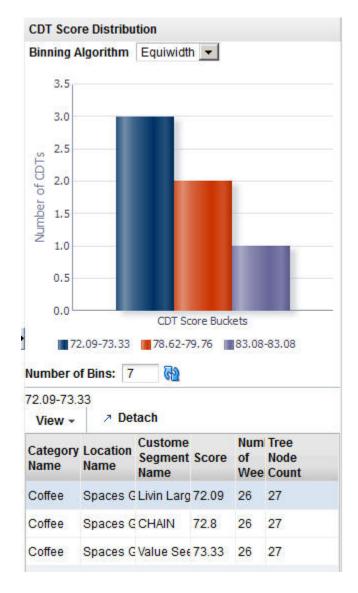
This icon provides access to CDT Compare. For details about this functionality, see Comparing Two CDTs

#### CDT Score Distribution Histogram

The CDT Score Distribution histogram displays, for the current calculation and the current user, the range of CDT scores and their frequencies. CDT scores range from 0 to 100; a higher number indicates a better score. You can use the information in this histogram to assess the quality of your CDTs.

For detailed information about using the histograms, see Getting Started..







Below the histogram you see a table that provides details about the histogram. This information can help you assess the quality of a CDT. Click on a specific bin in the histogram to populate the table with information about that bin. You see a list of all the specific partitions for the bin, along with the score for each, the number of weeks of data used to calculate the score, and the number of tree nodes for each partition for the selected bin.

#### Table 2-5 CDT Score Distribution Fields

Field Name	Description
Category Name	The category name of the partition for the specific CDT score.
Location Name	The location name of the partition for the specific CDT score.
Customer Segment Name	The customer segment name of the partition for the specific CDT score.



Field Name	Description
Score	The CDT score for the defined partition. A CDT score ranges from 0 to 100. A higher value indicates a better score.
Number of Weeks	The number of weeks of data used to calculate the CDT score.
Tree Node Count	The number of tree nodes present in the CDT tree structure used to calculate the CDT score.

Table 2-5	(Cont.)	CDT S	core Di	stribution	Fields
-----------	---------	-------	---------	------------	--------

### Generate CDT Tab

The Generate CDTs tab is used to configure, run, evaluate, modify, and deploy a CDT. The process is divided into five stages that must be run in order. You can return to a stage you have already completed and make changes, but if you do, you must rerun that stage and all the stages that follow that stage, as the calculations are invalidated by the modifications you just made to the settings in the stage you changed.

To monitor the progress of any stage, go to the Overview tab and click the **Refresh** icon.

The five CDT stages are:

Stage Name	Description
Data Setup	Select CMPO groups and define the time intervals for the data to be used in the calculation.
Data Filtering	Filter out input data that may result in inaccurate or unreliable answers.
Calculation	Calculate the CDT.
Evaluation	Assess the reliability and accuracy of the results of the calculation. Prune unreliable or inaccurate answers.
Escalation	Set the escalation path for the CDT. Use the Escalation Report to evaluate the results of the escalation.

Table 2-6 Generate CDTs Tab: Stages

#### Data Setup

The Data Setup stage provides two sections to configure: Category Selections and Time Interval Setup. In this stage, you select the category or categories you want to calculate CDTs for and specify the time interval for the calculation.

#### Process

Here is the high-level process for setting up the data for CDT.

- 1. Select the category or categories you want to calculate CDTs for.
- 2. Set up the time intervals for the CDT calculation.
- 3. Click **Next** to go to the Data Filtering stage.



#### **Category Selections**

Use this table to add categories you want to include in the CDT calculation or delete categories that you want to remove from the CDT calculation.

 Category Selections View - 🕂 🗶 🛃 ID Description Attributes Name 424133 Canned Vegetable 424134 Cookies 424135 Pasta 424136 Coffee BrandTier Segment SubCategory FormatSize SubSegment ManufacturingProcess Roast Private Label TradeType 424137 Baby Food 424138 Salty Snacks 424139 Juice

Figure 2-5 CDT Category Selections

To display a list of available nodes and the categories included in those nodes, click the **Add** icon. You see the Select One or More Categories dialog box, which contains two tabs, Browse and Search. You can use either tab to find the categories you are looking for.

Figure 2-6 CDT Categories Browse Tab

Browse	Search								
View + I	Format -	Freeze	Detach	7	11 12	Wrap 🖓			
Node							Number of Categories	SKU Count	Description
× 424126	Spaces Gro	cery					7		

The Browse tab displays a table with the following fields:

Table 2-7	Category	Selections: Browse	÷
-----------	----------	--------------------	---

Field Name	Description
Partition	The node tree structure can be expanded in order to view its categories.
Number of Categories	The number of categories within the node that has been selected. The number can help you understand the amount of processing required for the calculation.
SKU Count	The number of SKUs in a category. A category with too few SKUs may not produce good CDTs.
Description	A description that provides additional information about the category.

Select the category or categories within the node that you want to be part of CDT and click  $\mathbf{OK}$ .

#### Figure 2-7 CDT Categories Search Tab

Browse S	earch			
View -	Detach			
D	Name	Short Description	Level Description	
424126	Spaces Grocery		CMP	_
424127	Center Store		DIV	
424128	Shelf Stable Groce		GRP	
424129	Dry Goods		DEPT	
424130	Shelf Stable Bever		DEPT	
424131	Snacks		DEPT	
424132	Baby Needs		DEPT	
424133	Canned Vegetable		CLS	-

OK Cancel

The Search tab displays a table with the following fields:

#### Table 2-8 Category Selections: Search

Field Name	Field Description
ID	An external code used to identify the category in other systems such as CMPO.
Name	The category name.
Short Description	A description that provides additional information about the category.
Level Description	A description of the level of the merchandise hierarchy that the node belongs to.

Select the category or categories within the node that you want to be part of the CDT and click  $\mathbf{OK}$ .



Your selections are displayed in the Category Selections table.

### Time Interval Setup

The time interval defines the time span for the historical data that is used to calculate the CDT. Only the specified weeks of sales data are used in the calculation. A group of intervals can be defined. Gaps between intervals are permitted; however, intervals cannot overlap. A six-month period is recommended.

### Figure 2-8 CDT Time Interval Setup

🕂 🗶 🛃				2
Fiscal Year	Fiscal Period		Start	End
2010 💌	Fiscal Year		2010 💌	2010 🔻
2011 -	Fiscal Year	-	2011 -	2011 -

To define a time interval for the CDT to be generated, click the **Add** icon. A row displays in the dialog box. Select from the following drop-down menus in order to define the time interval:

Menu Name	Description
Fiscal Year	The fiscal year for the time interval.
Fiscal Period	The fiscal period within the fiscal year (Fiscal Quarter, Fiscal Period, or Fiscal Week).
Start	This defines when the time interval specified in Fiscal Period begins.
End	This defines when the time interval specified in Fiscal Period ends.

Table 2-9 Time Interval: Menus

After selecting the category and specifying the time interval, click **Next** to go to the Data Filtering stage.

### Data Filtering

The Data Filtering stage applies to all the categories and time intervals that you select in the Data Setup stage.

#### Process

Here is the high-level process for setting up and running data filtering.

- 1. Enter the appropriate values into the Filter Setup text entry boxes.
- 2. Click Run in order to filter the data.
- **3.** Review the filtering results in the Data Filtering Summary table and the Data Filtering histograms.
- 4. After reviewing the results, if necessary, make changes to the values for the filters in Filter Setup and re-run the stage.



5. When you are satisfied with the results, click **Next** to go to the Calculation stage.

# Filter Setup

You configure the following filters in order to filter out data you consider unacceptable for the calculation of the CDT. Note that the two attribute filters listed in Table 2-10 are stored and used during the Calculation stage. You also set additional data filtering parameters in the Calculation stage.

### Figure 2-9 CDT Filter Setup

Data Setup Data Filtering Calculation Evaluation Escalatio	n				
		Back	Next	Run	Stop
✓ Filter Setup					
	3				
🛯 * Attribute Filter : Minimum attribute uses	5				
🚱 \star Attribute Value Filter: Minimum attribute value uses	5				
	1%				
			-		

#### Table 2-10 Data Filters

Data Filter Name	Data Filter Description
SKU Filter: Missing attribute values maximum	Each SKU is defined by its attribute values. If a certain absolute value for the attribute values is not defined, then the product definition is not accurate. A SKU with too many missing attribute values should be filtered out. The default value is 25 for the total attribute values (that is, a SKU with greater than 25 missing attribute values is not included in the calculation of the CDT).
Attribute Filter: Minimum attribute uses	An attribute that is used by only a few SKUs should be filtered out. The default value is an absolute value of 5 for the total SKUs in the category (that is, the data for an attribute that is used by fewer than five of the SKUs is not included in the calculation of the CDT). This filter does not remove t-log level data but instead removes the attribute and attribute values from the CDT creation process.
Attribute Value Filter: Minimum attribute value uses	An attribute value that is used by only a few SKUs should be filtered out. The default value is an absolute value of 5 for the SKUs in a category (that is, the data for an attribute value that is used by fewer than five of the SKUs is not included in the calculation of the CDT). This filter does not remove t-log level data but instead removes the attribute and attribute values from the CDT creation process.



Data Filter Name	Data Filter Description
Customer Filter: Transaction history minimum	Customers with short transaction histories are considered outliers. You assign a percentage value that is applied to the median number of transactions for all customers. Such customers are filtered out. The default value is 10% (that is, a customer who has fewer than 10% of the median number of transactions for all customers is not included in the calculation of the CDT).
SKU-Segment-Location Filter: Transaction minimum	SKUs that have few transactions for a given location-segment partition are considered outliers. You assign a percentage value that is applied to the median number of transactions for the SKUs in a specific partition. Such transactions are filtered out. The default value is 10% (that is, a SKU that is involved in fewer than 10% of the median number of transactions for a specific partition is not included in the calculation of the CDT).

### Table 2-10 (Cont.) Data Filters

Once you have configured the filters, click **Run** to start the filtering process.

### Data Filtering Summary

The following information is provided after the filtering is complete and quantifies the amount of data filtered out for the three indicated filters for sales units, sales amounts, transaction counts, SKU counts, and customer counts. Use this information to assess the effects of the pruning.

Figure 2-10	CDT Data Filtering Summary

View - 🛃 🔂	-					
Filter Name	Pre-filter Sales Unit	Filtered sales unit	Pre-filter Sales Amount	Filtered sales amount	Pre-filter Transaction Count	Filtered transaction count
Filter SKUs which ar	e 3592598	0	6592902.84	0	2555850	0
Filter SKUs which do	13592598	279	6592902.84	1479.56	2555850	190
Filter Customers wh	ic 3592319	0	6591423.28	0	2555660	0
	4					



Field Name	Field Description
Filter Name	The following filter names are listed:
	Filter SKUs that are missing too many attribute values. This maps to the SKU Filter: Missing attribute values maximum in the Filter Setup.
	Filter SKUs that do not have enough sale transaction history. This maps to the Customer Filter: Transaction history minimum in the Filter Setup.
	Filter Customers that do not have typical transaction history. this maps to the SKU-Segment-Location Filter: Transaction minimum in the Filter Setup.
Pre-filter Sales Unit	Amount prior to the application of the filter.
Filtered Sales Unit	Amount remaining after the application of the filter.
Pre-filter Sales Amount	Amount prior to the application of the filter.
Filtered Sales Amount	Amount remaining after the application of the filter.
Pre-filter Transaction Count	Amount prior to the application of the filter.
Filtered Transaction Count	Amount remaining after the application of the filter.
Pre-filter SKU Count	Amount prior to the application of the filter.
Filtered SKU Count	Amount remaining after the application of the filter.
Pre-filter Customer Count	Amount prior to the application of the filter.
Filtered Customer Count	Amount remaining after the application of the filter.

Table 2-11 Filter Data Summary Fields

### Data Filtering Histograms

The following histograms illustrate the effects of filtering. You can use the information displayed in the histograms to adjust the configuration of the filters in order to eliminate outlier data. If you modify the filters, you must re-run the stage.

Table 2-12	Filter	Histograms
------------	--------	------------

Histogram Name	Description
Transactions Relative to the Category Median Distribution	Displays the number of transactions relative to the category median for a SKU's category.
Missing Attribute Distribution	Displays the number of attributes that have missing values per number of SKUs.
Customer Transaction Distribution	Displays the number of transactions in historical data per number of customers.
Daily Customer Transaction Distribution	Displays the relative number of transactions per day per number of customers.



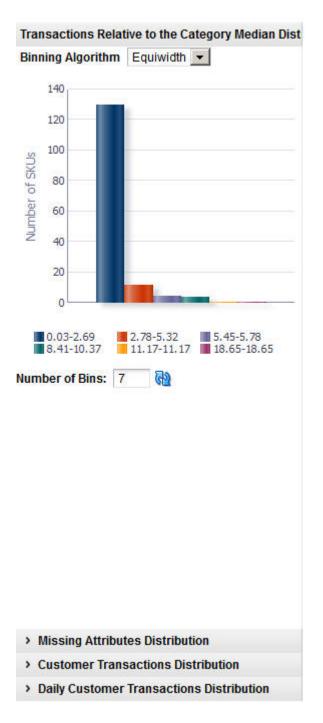


Figure 2-11 CDT Transactions Relative Histogram

Once you are satisfied with the pruning results, click **Next** to go to the Calculation stage.

# Calculation

The Calculation stage creates the CDTs for all of the partitions that you selected in the Data Setup stage. A separate CDT calculation occurs for each partition. For example, if you selected two CMPO nodes, and the system also has two customer segments and three



locations, then that is a total of  $2 \times 2 \times 3 = 12$  CDTs at the lowest level. In addition, there are CDTs at the higher levels (for example, above location).

#### Process

Here is the high-level process for calculating CDTs.

- **1**. Enter a unique name for the version of the CDTs to be calculated.
- 2. Enter values for lowest tree level and minimum percentage of SKUs.
- 3. Use the check boxes to indicate whether or not only the top-level processing calculation should occur for location or customer segment.
- 4. Customize the ranking of the category attributes if necessary.
- 5. Click **Run** to start the calculation.
- 6. Review the calculation results in the Calculation Report and the CDT Score Distribution histogram.
- 7. After reviewing the results, if necessary, make changes to the values for the calculation in Version Setup and re-run the stage.
- 8. When you are satisfied with the results, click **Next** to go to the Evaluation stage.

### Version Setup

At the top of this stage you see three text boxes and two check boxes that you use to configure the levels at which the calculation occurs.

<ul> <li>Version Name</li> <li>* Lowest Tree Level</li> <li>* Minimum percentage of</li> </ul>	Coffee CS Brand Seg SubCat	Process Location Top Level Only	V
	15	Process Customer Segment Top Level Only	Г
	5%		

Table 2-13 Calculation Stage: Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Version Name	Assign a name to each version of a CDT calculation. This allows you to create and save more than one version of a CDT. The version name you assign here is used in the Calculation Report, Aggregate Statistics table, and in the Manage CDTs tab. Version names can be re-used; however, if the version name in question has active CDTs, then you will see a warning that the active CDTS will be removed from the version if you do re-use the version name.



Field Name	Field Description
Lowest Tree Level	Use this option to define the maximum number of levels of CDTs to be calculated. The default value is 15. The number of levels in a CDT can at most be equal to the number of attributes used by the SKUs in the category plus 1. (The number 1 is used for the top level of the tree.) When determining the maximum number of levels, you should consider how many attributes should be represented in the tree. (For example, if you only want to see the top six attributes in the CDT, then set the lowest level to 7.)
Minimum Percentage of SKUs for the Terminal Node	Use this option to make sure the terminal nodes have a sufficient number of SKUs. For example, if the current CDT partition contains 100 SKUs, then any one node in the tree containing fewer than 5 SKUs will be considered a terminal node and the tree will not expand further along that branch of the tree.
Process Location Top Level Only	Check this option if you want CDTs to be calculated for the Location Chain <i>only</i> . You can select this option in order to decrease the amount of time it takes the system to perform the calculation.
Process Customer Segment Top Level Only	Check this option if you want CDTs to be calculated for the Customer Segment Chain <i>only</i> . You can select this option in order to decrease the amount of time it takes the system to perform the calculation.

Table 2-13	(Cont.)	Calculation Stage: Fields
------------	---------	---------------------------

### Category Attributes Setup

The application determines a specific ranking order for the category attributes. You can optionally change this order and create your own ranking of the attributes for a category by ordering the attributes from most important to least important. The Category Attributes Setup table lists the categories you are calculating CDTs for. Use this list to select a category to edit.

Click the **Edit** icon to access this functionality. You can adjust the ranking for all the attributes or a subset of the attributes.

Figure 2-13	CDT Category Attributes Setup
-------------	-------------------------------

View -	/ 🛃	
ID	Name	Attributes
424133	Canned Vegeta	ble
424134	Cookies	
424135	Pasta	
424136	Coffee	BrandTier Segment SubCategory FormatSize SubSegment ManufacturingProcess Roast Private Label TradeT
424137	Baby Food	
424138	Salty Snacks	
424139	Juice	



The Category Attributes Setup dialog box contains the following fields. For each attribute you want to rank, select the Top Attribute check box and enter a value for the Attribute Rank. Click **OK**.

Attribute Name	Top Attribute	Attribute Rank
ubCategory		
adeType		
ormatSize		
ubSegment		
anufacturingProcess		
oast		
egment		
andTier		
rivate Label		

### Figure 2-14 CDT Category Attributes Setup

Table 2-14	Category Attributes Setup	Dialog Box
------------	---------------------------	------------

Field	Description
Attribute Name	Identifies the attribute.
Top Attribute	Check to enable ranking. This indicates that this attribute must be one of the first attributes in the resulting tree. This box is checked automatically for functional fit attributes and cannot be deselected. A functional fit attribute is one for which a customer cannot choose a different product with a different attribute value. For example, windshield wiper blades must be selected according to the car manufacturer's requirements.
	The numerical rank is optional. If you do not enter rank values, then the system will determine the order of all the top attributes first and then put any remaining attributes below the top attributes in the tree.



Field	Description
Attribute Rank	Enter a value for each attribute, starting with the value 1, to indicate the relative rank of the attribute. A value can be entered only if the attribute has been identified as a top attribute. You do not have to specify the rank if Top Attribute is checked. If multiple attributes are checked, then the system rank orders them.

Once you have configured the parameters for the calculation, click **Run** to start the process.

# **Calculation Report**

The Calculation Report displays the CDT results for the indicated version from the last successful run (if one has occurred). Here you can review information by Location or by Customer Segment. You can also set a version as active, view and edit a CDT, or compare two CDTs.

### Figure 2-15 CDT Calculation Report

Browse By Location     Browse By Customer Segment       View -     Image: Constraint of the segment       Pruned     Total customer     Total weeks of     CDT score     Creation     C	
Total Total Creation C	
Croation C	声音は
IDs sales Date U	Creation Jser
Coffee	

Table 2-15	Calculation	<b>Report Fields</b>
------------	-------------	----------------------

Field Name	Description
Partition	A partition is the combination of category, segment, and location. The column identifies the names of all nodes in the tree structure in the table. The node type may be either category, location, or customer segment.
Pruned	The number of CDTs removed from the list of usable CDTs. CDTs are removed that do not meet the filtering thresholds. During the Escalation stage, the escalation process makes adjustments for the CDTs that are removed.
Total Customer IDs	The number of customers used in the calculation of the CDT.
Total Weeks of Sales	The total number of weeks of sales used in the calculation of the CDT. This provides an indication of the amount of sales data used in the calculation. All the CDTs in a given version should have a similar value; if this is not the case, the results should be evaluated.
CDT Score	A confidence score assigned to help in assessing the quality of the CDT. A CDT score ranges from 0 to 100. A higher value indicates a better score.
Creation Date	The date when the version whose data is displayed was created.



Table 2-15	(Cont.)	Calculation	<b>Report Fields</b>
------------	---------	-------------	----------------------

Field Name	Description
Creation User	The login name of the user who created the version.

The following icons are available for the Calculation Report:

#### Set Version as Complete

Each partition must have an active CDT. The active CDT is used by other applications that require a CDT.

All CDTs within a version are activated when you click Set Version as Complete.

If a CDT exists in more than one version, then the most recently activated version takes precedence.

If a version contains multiple categories and is Complete and then a different version with a partial overlap of categories is later marked as Complete, only the overlapping categories are replaced in the new version.

If a version is overwritten, then the CDTs in that version are no longer active.

When a CDT is at risk of going from active to inactive, you will see a warning message.

To determine whether or not a CDT is active, go to the Manage CDTs tab. The Browse by Categories or by Versions table displays a flag that indicates whether or not a CDT is active.

### **View One CDT**

This icon provides access to the CDT Editor. For details about this functionality, see Using the CDT Editor.

#### **Compare Two CDTs**

This icon provides access to CDT Compare. For details about this functionality, see Comparing Two CDTs

### CDT Score Distribution Histogram

The CDT Score Distribution histogram displays, for the current calculation, the range of CDT scores and their frequencies. CDT scores range from 0 to 100; a higher number indicates a better score. You can use the information in this histogram to assess the quality of your CDTs.

Below the histogram you see a table that provides details about the histogram. This information can help you assess the quality of a CDT. Click on a specific bin in the histogram to populate the table with information about that bin. You see a list of all the specific category name/location name/customer segment name partitions for the bin, along with the score for each, the number of weeks of data used to calculate the score, and the number of tree nodes for each partition.



Field Name	Description
Category Name	The category name of the partition for the specific CDT score.
Location Name	The location name of the partition for the specific CDT score.
Customer Segment Name	The customer segment name of the partition for the specific CDT score.
Score	A confidence score assigned to help in assessing the quality of the CDT. A CDT score ranges from 0 to 100. A higher value indicates a better score.
Number of Weeks	The number of weeks of data used to calculate the CDT score.
Tree Node Count	The number of tree nodes used to calculate the CDT score.

	Table 2-16	<b>CDT Score Distribution Fields</b>
--	------------	--------------------------------------

When you have finished with the calculation process, click **Next** to go to the Evaluation stage.

### Evaluation

Once the CDT has been generated, you can evaluate it and make adjustments to parameters used in the CDT calculation during the Evaluation stage. Only the current version of the CDT, the one just generated in the Calculation stage, can be assessed in the Evaluation stage.

#### Process

Here is the high-level process for using the Evaluation stage to prune the results of the CDT calculation.

- 1. If you have determined that you need to prune the results of the calculation, enter appropriate values into the text boxes in the Pruning Setup area.
- 2. Click Run to start the pruning process.
- 3. Review the pruning results in the Pruning Results section and in the Pruning histograms.
- 4. After reviewing the results, if necessary, make changes to the values for the pruning and re-run the stage.
- 5. When you are satisfied with the results, click **Next** to go to the Escalation stage.

### **Pruning Setup**

You can make changes by pruning the CDT based on the customer count, the SKU count, the tree-level count, and the minimum CDT score. To do this, enter a minimum value for each pruning filter.

### Figure 2-16 CDT Pruning Setup

<ul> <li>Pruning Setup</li> </ul>		
Minimum Customer Count	1000	
	10	
Minimum Tree Level Count	2	
	0	



Once you have completed setting up the filters, click **Run** to begin the processing. After you review the pruning results, you can change the values for the filters if you find it necessary. Once you make changes, you must run the stage again in order to see the results of your changes.

Filter Name	Filter Description
Minimum Customer Count	The minimum number of customers to be used in the CDT calculation. The default is 1000.
Minimum SKU Count	The minimum number of SKUs to be used in the CDT calculation. The default is 10.
Minimum Tree Level Count	The minimum number of levels to be used in the CDT calculation. The default is 2.
Minimum CDT Score	The minimum measure of the quality of a CDT to be used in the CDT calculation. The default is 25.

### Table 2-17 Pruning Setup: Filters

### **Pruning Results**

The Pruning Results are located below Pruning Setup and display information that can help you assess the effects of the values you provided for the pruning filters.

Figure 2-17 CDT Pruning Results

~ Pruning	Results				
	Numbe	er of CDTs gen	erated 6		
	Nu	mber of CDTs p	oruned 0		
Categori		o CDTs after P	runing		La reventaria
View -	ß				
Filter Nam	e				Number of CDTs pruned
Prune CD	Ts where	the customer	count involved in the	calculation is too low	0
Prune CD	Ts where	the SKU count	t involved in the calc	ulation is too low	0
Prune CD	Ts where	the number of	levels in the tree is	too low	0
Prune CD	Ts where	the CDT Score	e represents too low	r of a quality	0
View -	ß				
		Minimum	Maximum	Average	
CE	T score	72.09	83.08	76.61	
Number	fnodes	27	27	27	
Tre	e depth	4	4	4	

Table 2-18 Pruning Results

Field Name	Field Description
Number of CDTs Generated	The number of CDTs that were generated by the Calculation stage.



Field Name	Field Description
Number of CDTs Pruned	The number of CDTs that were pruned after the filters were applied.
Categories with no CDTs After Pruning	The names of the categories from which all CDTs were pruned.

Table 2-18 (Cont.) Pruning Results

Below this list is a table that identifies the number of CDTs that have been pruned by the following filters.

- Prune CDTs where the customer count involved in the calculation is too low.
- Prune CDTs where the SKU count involved in the calculation is too low.
- Prune CDTs where the number of levels in the tree is too low.
- Prune CDTs where the CDT score represents too low a quality.

A second table provides an overview of the pruning results, including the minimum, maximum, and average values for the CDT score, the number of nodes, and tree depth.

The number of nodes indicates the size of the tree. If a CDT contains few nodes, this can indicate a problem with the data or that too many nodes were excluded during the Calculation stage (because of a parameter setting).

Tree depth also indicates the size of the tree. This value can be used in conjunction with the Lowest Tree Level setting in the Calculation stage to analyze the results in terms of the number of levels in the tree.

### **Evaluation Report**

The Evaluation Report displays the CDT results for the indicated version from the last successful run, if one has occurred. Here you can review information by Location or by Customer Segment. You can also set a version as active, view and edit a CDT, or compare two CDTs.

Field Name	Description
Partition	A partition is the combination of category, segment, and location. The column identifies the names of all nodes in the tree structure in the table. The node type may be either category, location, or customer segment.
Pruned	The number of CDTs removed from the list of usable CDTs. CDTs are removed that do not meet the filtering thresholds. During the Escalation stage, the escalation process makes adjustments for the CDTs that are removed.
Total Customer IDs	The number of customers used in the calculation of the CDT.
Total Weeks of Sales	The total number of weeks of sales used in the calculation of the CDT. This provides an indication of the amount of sales data used in the calculation. All the CDTs in a given version should have a similar value; if this is not the case, the results should be evaluated.
CDT Score	A confidence score assigned to help in assessing the quality of the CDT. A CDT score ranges from 0 to 100. A higher value indicates a better score.

Table 2-19 Evaluation Report Fields



#### Table 2-19 (Cont.) Evaluation Report Fields

Field Name	Description
Creation Date	The date when the version whose data is displayed was created.
Creation User	The login name of the user who created the version.

The following icons are available for the Evaluation Report:

#### Set Version as Complete

Each partition must have an active CDT. The active CDT is used by other applications that require a CDT.

All CDTs within a version are activated when you click Set Version as Complete.

If a CDT exists in more than one version, then the most recently activated version takes precedence.

If a version contains multiple categories and is Complete and then a different version with a partial overlap of categories is later marked as Complete, only the overlapping categories are replaced in the new version.

If a version is overwritten, then the CDTs in that version are no longer active.

When a CDT is at risk of going from active to inactive, you will see a warning message.

To determine whether or not a CDT is active, go to the Manage CDTs tab. The Browse by Categories or by Versions table displays a flag that indicates whether or not a CDT is active.

#### **View One CDT**

This icon provides access to the CDT Editor. For details about this functionality, see Using the CDT Editor.

#### **Compare Two CDTs**

This icon provides access to CDT Compare. For details about this functionality, see Comparing Two CDTs.

Three histograms are provided in the Evaluation stage.

### **Evaluation Histograms**

The following histograms are displayed in the Evaluation stage. You can use the information from the histograms to understand the data that was pruned by the filters.

Table 2-20	Evaluation Hi	stograms
------------	---------------	----------

Name	Description
Customer Count Distribution	Displays the number of CDTs for a specific customer count.
SKU Count Distribution	Displays the number of CDTs for a specific SKU count.
CDT Score Distribution	Displays the CDT score distribution.



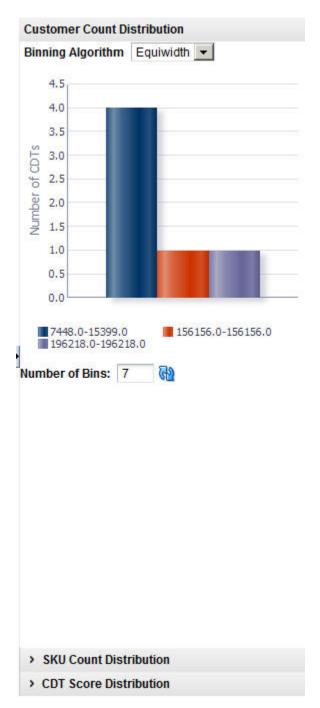


Figure 2-18 CDT Customer Count Distribution

When you have completed the evaluation of the results, click **Next** to go to the Escalation stage.

# Escalation

The Escalation stage is used to fill in the holes for partitions whose CDTs were removed during pruning by setting up a search path through the segment hierarchy and the location hierarchy.



### Process

Here is the high-level process for setting up an escalation.

- **1.** Enter a series of numbers to indicate the escalation rank, which determines the order in which the escalation occurs.
- 2. Click **Run** to start the escalation process.
- 3. Review the escalation results in the Escalation Report.
- 4. After reviewing the results, if necessary, make changes to the escalation ranks and rerun the stage.
- 5. When you are satisfied with the results, you can complete the version and make the version active so that it is available for other applications to use.

### Setup Escalation

Escalation occurs along the segment hierarchy and the location hierarchy. Here is an example of an escalation path:

### Figure 2-19 CDT Setup Escalation

View -	3		7
Customer Segment Level	Location Level	Escalation Rank	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
CHAIN	COMPANY	7	
CHAIN	CHAIN	5	
CHAIN	AREA	3	
CHAIN	REGION	1	
SEGMENT	COMPANY	6	
SEGMENT	CHAIN	4	
SEGMENT	AREA	2	

The following fields are required to set up the escalation.

Table 2-21 Setup Escalation

Field	Description		
Customer Segment Level	Identifies the customer segment level in the escalation.		
Location Level	Identifies the location level in the escalation.		
Escalation Rank	Used to assign the ranks for the escalation, which determines the order in which the escalation occurs.		

Here is an example of an escalation path.



Segment Level	Location Level	Escalation Rank
Segment chain	Location chain	8
Segment chain	Region	7
Segment chain	Location area	6
Segment chain	Store cluster	5
Segments	Location chain	4
Segments	Region	3
Segments	Location area	2
Segments	Store cluster	1

Table 2-22	Example of Escalation Path
------------	----------------------------

You fill in the order of numbers. Every row must have an ordering number, and no ordering number can be reused.

The escalation path is specific to the user and the current version that the user is working on.

The default ordering is to go up the location hierarchy first, and then up the segment hierarchy, as shown in the example above. The reason is that the segment hierarchy has only two levels, and so its top level is very general.

### **Escalation Report**

The Escalation Report breaks down the numbers to provide counts for the number of partitions filled with higher-level CDTs and the number of partitions that have not been changed by escalation. In addition, the fraction of CDTs for each partition is displayed.

Figure 2-20	CDT Escalation Report
-------------	-----------------------

<ul> <li>Escalat</li> </ul>	tion Re	port			6
	source source	ed from escalati ed from calculat o source			
View +	₿				
Customer Segment Level		Location Level	Number of CDTs	Percentages	
	display	2 T			

Table 2-23	<b>Escalation Report</b>
------------	--------------------------

Field Name	Description
Total Partitions	The number of partitions in the version.
Partitions Sourced from Escalation	The number of partitions removed during escalation.
Partitions sourced from Calculation	The number of partitions removed during calculation.



Field Name	Description
Partitions with No Source	A partition that does not have CDTs assigned to it because all CDTs related to the partition have been pruned.
Customer Segment Level	Identifies the customer segment level.
Location Level	Identifies the location level.
Number of CDTs	The number of partitions that are trying to have a CDT assigned. This is generally the number of customer segments by the number of locations.
Percentages	The percentage of partitions that have been assigned a CDT from a given escalation level.

Table 2-23 (Cont.) Escalation Report

### **Completion of Process**

When a version is complete, the results for the version are activated so that other applications can use the information. The similarity data that has been calculated during the generation process is also activated for use.

After the completion of this step, the intermediate results from each stage are removed from the database and can no longer be used.

# Manage CDTs Tab

The Manage CDTs tab is used to control which version of a CDT is active or approved. You can also access the functionality to edit a CDT or compare two CDTs.

By Categories By Versions								
View - 🖌 60 👬 🖬 🖉 💥 🕅	2					7	夏雨1	
Category - Version - Location - Customer Segment	Active Flag	Creation Date	Creation User	Completion Date	Complet User	tion	CDT score	
✓ Coffee	Y			11/10/2013	cdmUse	rO		
Approved Version	N	11/9/2013	System					
<ul> <li>Coffee CS Brand</li> </ul>	Y	11/9/2013	cdmUser0	11/10/2013	cdmUse	rO		
Coffee CS Brand Seg Form	N	11/9/2013	cdmUser0					
Coffee CS Brand Seg SubCat	N	11/9/2013	cdmUser0					
<ul> <li>Coffee CS Brand SubCat Seg</li> </ul>	N	11/9/2013	cdmUser0					
<ul> <li>Coffee CS Initial</li> </ul>	N	11/9/2013	cdmUser0					
> Smoke Test	N	11/27/2013	cdtUser0					

Figure 2-21 Manage CDTs

You can find the CDT you are interested in by:

- Browsing by categories or versions
- Searching by version name or user name.



#### Set Version as Complete

Each partition must have an active CDT. The active CDT is used by other applications that require a CDT.

All CDTs within a version are activated when you click Set Version as Complete.

If a CDT exists in more than one version, then the most recently activated version takes precedence.

If a version contains multiple categories and is Complete and then a different version with a partial overlap of categories is later marked as Complete, only the overlapping categories are replaced in the new version.

If a version is overwritten, then the CDTs in that version are no longer active.

When a CDT is at risk of going from active to inactive, you will see a warning message.

To determine whether or not a CDT is active, go to the Manage CDTs tab. The Browse by Categories or by Versions table displays a flag that indicates whether or not a CDT is active.

#### **View One CDT**

This button provides access to the CDT Editor. For details about this functionality, see Using the CDT Editor.

#### **Compare Two CDTs**

This button provides access to CDT Compare. For details about this functionality, see Comparing Two CDTs.

#### **Approve a Version**

Only one approved CDT is permitted for a given CMPO node/segment/location combination. If you approve a second CDT with the same combination, it overwrites the first one.

If an Approved CDT exists, then the Approved CDT is returned to the requesting application.

If no Approved CDT exists, then the Active CDT is returned to the requesting application.

If no Approved CDT exists and no Active CDT exists, an error is returned to the requesting application.

Approval can be done for individual CDTs or for an entire version; activation is for an entire version.

An approved version is used by the CMPO application. An active version is used by Demand Transference.

#### Unapprove

Use this to change the status of a CDT that was previously approved. Select a single CDT record in the data table and click the **Unapprove** button to remove it from the approved version.

#### **Delete a Version**

If you delete a version, it cannot be activated. You cannot delete an approved version, but you can remove a CDT from an approved version.



# Browse by Category or Version

You can browse by category or version. The following information is displayed:

Table 2-24 Browsing by Category or Version

Field Name	Field Description
VersionCustomer Segment	Partition
Active Flag	Y = Version is active. N = version is not active.
Creation Date	Date on which version was created.
Creation User	User who created the version.
Activation Date	Date on which the version was made active.
Activation User	User who made the version active.
CDT Score	A confidence score assigned to help in assessing the quality of the CDT. A CDT score ranges from 0 to 100. A higher value indicates a better score.

# Search

You can search by version name or creation user name. In addition, you can design a search with specific criteria and save that search for future use.

### Create CDT

You can create a new CDT in two ways: by modifying an existing CDT or by defining a new CDT.

elections				
× 🝸	Es			
Name	ShortDescr			
CHAIN				^
GROUP				
DMM				
ELF				
Tobacco Counter				-
	X Y S Name CHAIN GROUP DMM ELF	Image: Chain of the sector	Name   ShortDescr   CHAIN   GROUP   DMM   ELF	X Y   Name ShortDescr   CHAIN GROUP   DMM ELF

### Figure 2-22 Create CDT



- 1. Click the Create CDT icon, shown in Figure 2-22.
- If you want to create a new CDT based on an existing one, select the version you want to use as a template from the list of Category Selections. If you want to create a new CDT, skip this step.
- 3. Enter the Version Name for the new CDT.
- 4. Select the Product Category, Customer Segment Name, and Location Name.
- 5. Click OK. You see the CDT Editor.
- 6. You can use the CDT editor, described in "Using the CDT Editor", to edit the new CDT and add a child, make changes to a branch, or change the assigned names.
- 7. When you have finished creating and editing the new CDT, click Save CDT.
- 8. To approve the new CDT, click Approve CDT.

### Deleting a CDT

To delete a CDT, click the **Delete CDT** icon.

# Using the CDT Editor

You can view or edit a CDT using the CDT Editor, which you access by clicking the **Edit** button. The CDT Editor displays the Customer Segment Name and Location Name for the CDT. It provides tools to navigate through the display using Zoom, Pan, Center, and Layout functionality.

The following functionality is available:

- Add a Child
- Edit
- Delete
- Delete Branch
- Copy Branch
- Paste Branch
- Save and Approve

### Add a Child

To add a child node to the CDT, do the following:

- 1. Click Add Child. You see the Add CDT Node window.
- 2. Select an attribute from the **Attribute** drop-down menu.
- 3. Select a value from the Attribute Value drop-down menu.
- 4. Select the Create separate branch per value check box, if applicable. When more than one of the attribute values are selected, this field create a separate node for every attribute value selected.



### Note:

A node can be created by selecting one or more attribute values. If multiple attribute values are chosen, and the check box to create a separate branch is not selected, one node that represents multiple attribute values is created.

If one branch is created for all values of an attribute, select all attribute values and only one node will appear with the attribute value of ALL.

If all the attribute values for an attribute are used, either by creating one node or separate nodes, a child cannot be added to the node and the **Add Child** is disabled. Creating a node with ALL does not associate the specific attribute values with the node. Instead, it encompasses any attribute value.

5. Click OK.

### Editing Nodes

Editing is allowed on all nodes as long as there are additional attribute values available. The selections from the node being edited are preselected in the dialog. The attribute cannot be changed, so the attribute drop-down menu is not disabled. Any attribute values that are in use by other siblings are not be displayed in the list.

### **Deleting Nodes**

Nodes can be deleted from the tree. There are two options for deleting: Delete and Delete Branch.

Selecting Delete deletes the selected node. Delete is available for any leaf node (a node without any children). It is also available for a non-leaf node that represents all the attributes for an attribute value: the children under this node move under the parent.

Selecting Delete Branch deletes the entire branch of nodes under the selected node, but not the selected node itself.

### Copying/Pasting in Customer Decision Tree Editor

Copy and Paste functionality is provided to copy nodes from one branch to another. **Copy Branch** is enabled when a node is selected that has children. The Copy Branch function copies the full branch of children of the selected node, but not the selected node itself. **Paste Branch** is enabled when a branch has been copied and the selected node is a leaf node.

# Viewing a Customer Decision Tree

The Customer Decision Trees have the potential to become large and occupy more space than the screen real estate allows for. The hierarchy viewer component used to display the Customer Decision Tree provides several features to assist in viewing the Customer Decision Tree effectively.



#### **Expanding and Collapsing Branches**

One way to limit the amount of space taken up by the Customer Decision Tree is to collapse branches of the tree. For any node that has children, a small triangle appears at the bottom of the box for that node. Hovering over the triangle enlarges it and displays an option to collapse that node if it is expanded and expand the node if it is collapsed.

#### Moving the Tree

If the entire Customer Decision Tree is not visible on one screen, the Customer Decision Tree can be moved to make other parts of the tree visible. The view can be moved by either clicking and dragging or by using the panning controls in the control bar for the hierarchy viewer.

### Zooming

The hierarchy viewer provides some controls for zooming in and out to allow more or less of the tree to be in view at a time. Zooming out shrinks the size of the nodes, which may make them difficult to read.

# **Comparing Two CDTs**

You can also compare two CDTs using the same CDT Editor functionality. You select the two CDTs you want to compare from the list. Both CDTs are displayed side by side.



# 3 Demand Transference

This chapter described the use of the Demand Transference Science Cloud Service module.

# Introduction

Demand Transference (DT) helps you to compare products based on their similarities in order to determine what, if any, products customers might buy if the product they want to buy is for some reason unavailable. In this way, planning and ordering can be optimized. DT calculates similarities by comparing the attributes of the two products. If you are using CDT in conjunction with DT, you also have available the similarities calculated by CDT, which are based on customer-supplied transaction data.

The DT Cloud Service module consists of three tabs: Overview, Generate Models, and Manage Models. You use the Overview tab to keep track of the status of each stage during the main work you do with the application within the Generate Models tab. You use the Manage Models tab to evaluate the demand elasticity results and override the Maximum Substitutable Demand Percentage value, if that is needed.

# **Overview of DT Process**

When you use the DT Cloud Service module, you follow this general iterative process to create and manage DT models:

- Data Setup. You define the categories to be used in the DT calculation.
- Data Filtering. You configure filters that remove input data that might cause errors in the calculation or that can lead to inaccurate or unreliable results.
- Similarity Calculation. You calculate similarities and assess the results of the calculation.
- Elasticity Calculation. You calculate the assortment elasticities and assess the results in terms of substitutable demand, which is the percentage of demand of a SKU that is retained when the SKU is deleted from the stores where it is selling.
- Escalation. When you are satisfied with your results, you can set the escalation path you can set the escalation path to fill in the holes for partitions whose DT models were removed during pruning by setting up a search path through the segment hierarchy and the location hierarchy. Then you can set a version of the DT model as complete.
- Manage Models. Use this tab to set time intervals for evaluating your results and to override the value for the maximum substitutable demand percentage.

# **Overview Tab**

The Overview tab displays information that you can view and use to monitor the progress of the DT stages as well as to view some aggregate statistics and the DT results from the last successful run.

This tab contains the following sections:



- Generation Stage Status
- Aggregate Statistics
- Calculation Report

# **Generation Stage Status**

The Generation Stage Status table displays the current status of each of the DT stages.

Click the **Refresh** icon to update the fields and see the latest status for each stage.

Figure 3-1 DT Generation Stage Status

View 👻 📳	62			7
Stage Name	Start Date	End Date	Stage Status	
Data Setup	2013-11-10 12:36:46	2013-11-10 12:36:46	Not Started	
Data Filtering	2013-11-10 12:36:46	2013-11-10 12:37:26	Not Started	
Similarity	2013-11-11 08:28:58	2013-11-11 08:31:07	Not Started	
Elasticity	2013-11-11 08:32:08	2013-11-11 10:07:30	Not Started	
Escalation	2013-11-12 01:53:52	2013-11-12 01:53:53	Not Started	

You can use the status information to monitor the progress of each stage. It contains the following fields, which can be arranged and viewed, but not modified.

Table 3-1 Generation Stage Status Fields

Field Name	Description
Stage Name	A row exists in the table for each DT stage that provides detailed status information. The five stages are Data Setup, Data Filtering, Similarity, Elasticity, and Escalation.
Start Date	The date and time when a run for the stage most recently started.
End Date	The date and time when a run for the stage most recently ended.
Stage Status	The current status of the stage: Not Started, Not Started (Scheduled for Later), Processing, Completed Successfully, Stopped/Paused, Cancelled, or Failed.

The following table provides an explanation of the different values for the status of a stage.

Table 3-2 Stage Status Values

Stage Status	Description
Not Started	This indicates that the stage has not yet been initiated. This can occur when you first begin to create a DT model or when you update an existing version.



Stage Status	Description
Not Started (Scheduled for Later)	This indicates that the stage is scheduled to start after the previous stage is complete.
Processing	This indicates that the stage is currently being processed.
Stopped/Paused	This indicates either that the stage has been stopped by the application or that the user has chosen to stop the process (for example, to make a change to an option). In the later case, once any background processing has stopped, the user can re-run the stopped stage.
Completed Successfully	This indicates that the stage has been successfully processed.
Completed with Errors	This indicates that the stage was able to complete the processing of all requested CDTs, but one or more CDTs encountered errors during the run and were not able to complete successfully. This most commonly occurs when the data used for a CDT is not available or is too sparse to produce a result.
Cancelled	This indicates that the database has cancelled the execution of the stage either because of missing data or an exception. The user should review the RSE_LOG_MSG log to determine the problem.
Failed	This indicates that a problem occurred during the processing.

Table 3-2 (Cont.) Stage Status Values

# **Aggregate Statistics**

The Aggregate Statistics table displays statistical details about the existing DT model versions.

Click the **Refresh** icon to update the fields and see the latest information in this table.

View - 🛃   🔞					
Version	Created By User	Distinct Categories	Distinct Locations	Distinct Customer Segments	Number of models generated
Coffee Attr	cdmUser0	1	10	1	10
Coffee Attr Chain	dtUser0	1	1	1	1
Coffee Attr2	cdmUser0	1	10	6	60
Coffee Smoke Test	dtUser0	1	1	1	1
Coffee Txn	cdmUser0	1	10	1	10

Figure 3-2 DT Aggregate Statistics

Each existing version has a row in the table. The table contains the following fields, which can be arranged and viewed but not modified.



Table 3-3	Aggregate	Statistics	Fields
-----------	-----------	------------	--------

Field Name	Description
Version	User-created name that uniquely identifies this DT model version
Created By User	The user name of the person who created this version.
Distinct Categories	The number of categories associated with this version.
Distinct Locations	The number of locations associated with this version.
Distinct Customer Segments	The number of customer segments associated with this version.
Number of Models Generated	The number of DT models that have been calculated for this version.

# **Calculation Report**

The Calculation Report displays the DT model results from the last successful run, if one has occurred.

Here you can review information by Location or by Customer Segment.

Click the **Refresh** icon to update the fields and see the latest information in this table.

Figure 3-3 DT Calculation Report

lersion Coffee	Attr2							
By Location	By Customer Segment							
View -	62					7	ET 🛒	12
Node		Calculation Status	Exclusion Status	Assortment Elasticity	Creation Date		Created By User	
✓ Coffee								-
> e-comme	rce USA							
> Spaces G	rocery							
> Spaces G	rocery							
> North								
> e-comme	rce USA							
								100

The Calculation Report contains the following fields:

Table 3-4 DT Calculation Report Fields

Field Name	Description
Node	Identifies the node name.
Calculation Status	Yes indicates that the calculation is complete. No indicates that the calculation is not complete.
Exclusion Status	Yes indicates that data has been pruned. No indicates that data has not been pruned.



Field Name	Description
Assortment Elasticity	A number calculated by the application that is a parameter in the DT model. A larger magnitude indicates larger overall transference.
Creation Date	The date when the version whose data is displayed was created.
Created By User	The login name of the person who created the version.

Table 3-4 (Cont.) DT Calculation Report Fields

# **Generate Models Tab**

The Generate Models tab is used to configure, run, evaluate, modify, and deploy a DT model. The process is divided into five stages that must be run in order. You can return to a stage you have already completed and make changes, but if you do, you must re-run that stage and all the stages that follow that stage, as the calculations are invalidated by the modifications you just made to the settings in that stage.

The five stages are:

#### Table 3-5 Generate Models Tab: Stages

Stage Name	Description
Data Setup	Select the nodes for the DT model calculations.
Data Filtering	Filter out input data that may result in inaccurate or unreliable answers.
Similarity Calculation	Calculate the similarities in customer demand.
Elasticity Calculation	Calculate the assortment elasticities for customer demand.
Escalation	Set the escalation path for the DT model. Use the Escalation Report to evaluate the results of the escalation.

### Data Setup

The Data Setup stage is used to add and delete the categories to be used in the DT model generation process.

#### Process

Here is a high-level process for setting up the data for DT.

- 1. Select the category or categories you want to calculate DT models for.
- 2. Click Next to go to the Data Filtering stage.

### **Category Selections**

Use this table to add categories you want to include in the DT model calculation or delete categories that you want to remove from the DT model calculation.



### Figure 3-4 DT Category Selections

Description	
	Description

To display a list of available nodes and the categories included in those nodes, click the **Add** icon. You see the Select One or More Categories dialog box, which contains two tabs, Browse and Search. You can use either tab to find the categories you are looking for.

Browse	Search										
View -	Format -					7	1.1	 T.	12	1.8	÷
lode		Number of Categories	SKU Cour	Description	11						
1 Space	s Grocery	7									
								-	ок	Canc	

Figure 3-5 DT Browse Categories

The Browse tab displays a table with the following fields:

Table 3-6	Category	Selections:	Browse
-----------	----------	-------------	--------

Field Name	Description
Node	The node tree structure can be expanded in order to view its categories.
Number of Categories	The number of categories within the node that has been selected. The number can help you understand the amount of processing required for the calculation.
SKU Count	The number of SKUs in a category. A category with too few SKUs may not produce good DT models.
Description	A description that provides additional information about the category.



Select the category or categories within the node that you want to be part of the DT model and click **OK**.

elect One o	or More Categ	gories			C
Browse	Search				
View -					
ID	Name	e	Description	Level Description	
1	Spac	es Grocery		CMP	<u> </u>
10	Cente	er Store		DIV	
100	Shelf	Stable Groce		GRP	
4000	Dry G	oods		DEPT	
1000	Shelf	Stable Bever	,	DEPT	
3000	Snac	ks		DEPT	
2000	Baby	Needs		DEPT	
60000	Cann	ed Vegetable	r.	CLS	•
		1			

Figure 3-6 DT Search Categories

The Search tab displays a table with the following fields:

Table 3-7 Category Selections: Search

Field Name	Field Description
ID	An external code used to identify the category in other systems such as CMPO.
Name	The category name.
Short Description	A description that provides additional information about the category.
Level Description	A description of the level of the merchandise hierarchy that the node belongs to.

Select the category or categories within the node that you want to be part of the DT model and click **OK**.

Your selections are displayed in the Category Selections table.

After selecting the categories, click **Next** to go to the Data Filtering stage.

### **Data Filtering**

The Data Filtering stage applies to all the categories that you select in the Data Setup stage. You should set the filters based on the histograms for each filter. The histograms help identify what data is actual outlier data, as compared to the rest of the data. In most cases, the default settings should be sufficient. However, if a histogram shows a flatter distribution, then you should consider modifying the default settings.



#### Process

Here is the high-level process for setting up and running data filtering.

- 1. Enter the appropriate values into the Filter Setup text entry boxes.
- 2. Click **Run** in order to filter the data.
- **3.** Review the filtering results in the Data Filtering Summary table and the Data Filtering histograms.
- 4. After reviewing the results, if necessary, make changes to the values for the filters in Filter Setup and re-run the stage.
- 5. When you are satisfied with the results, click **Next** to go to the Similarity Calculation stage.

### Filter Setup

You configure the following filters in order to filter out data you consider unacceptable from the calculation of the DT model.

### Figure 3-7 DT Filter Setup

	SKU Filters	
* Minimum length of history	1.00%	
Minimum total sales units	1.00%	
	Store Filters	
🚱 \star Minimum SKU count	10	

#### Table 3-8 Data Filters

Filter Name	Description
Minimum Length of History	This filter prunes SKU-segment-store combinations that have a short transaction history. The threshold is defined as a percentage of the median value for the category. The default value is 1%.
Minimum Total Sales Units	This filter prunes SKU-segment-store combinations that have a small number of total sales units during a given sales history for a specified customer segment and store. The threshold is defined as a percentage of the median value for the category. The default value is 1%.
Minimum SKU Count	This filter is applied after the above two filters and looks at the remaining data to determine if a store does not have enough SKUs. The threshold is defined as a set number of SKUs per store. The default value is 10 SKUs.

### **Data Filter Summary**

This section describes the Data Filter Summary, shown in Figure 3-8.



View -	<b>P</b>	62						
ilter Nam	ie	Pre-filter Sales Unit	Post-filter Sales Unit	Filtered Sales Unit	Filtered Sales Unit Percentage	Pre-filter SKU Count	Post-filter SKU Count	Filtered SKU Count
Length o	f History	1745156	1745156	0	0%	56	56	0
Total Sal	es Units	1745156	1745156	0	0%	56	56	0
SK	U Count	1745156	1709337	35819	2.05%	56	56	0

#### Figure 3-8 DT Data Filter Summary

The following information is provided after the filtering is complete and quantifies the amount of data filtered out for baseline history, total sales units, sales amounts, and SKU counts. Use this information to assess the effects of filtering.

Click the **Refresh** icon to update the fields and see the latest information for this table.

Field Name	Field Description
Filter Name	The relevant filter of the three listed above.
Pre-filter Sales Unit	Amount prior to the application of the filter.
Post-filter Sales Unit	Amount remaining after the application of the filter.
Filtered Sales Unit	Amount filtered.
Filtered Sales Unit Percentage	Amount filtered, expressed as a percentage.
Pre-filter SKU Count	Amount prior to application of the filter.
Post-filter SKU Count	Amount remaining after application of the filter.
Filtered SKU Count	Amount filtered.
Filtered SKU Count Percentage	Amount filtered, expressed as a percentage.

#### Table 3-9 Data Filter Summary Fields

### Data Filtering Histograms

The following histograms illustrate the effects of filtering. You can use the information displayed in the histograms to adjust the configuration of the filters in order to eliminate outlier data. If you modify the filters, you must re-run the stage.

For information about adjusting the display of the histograms, see the Getting Started.

<b>Table 3-10</b>	Data Filterin	g Histograms
-------------------	---------------	--------------

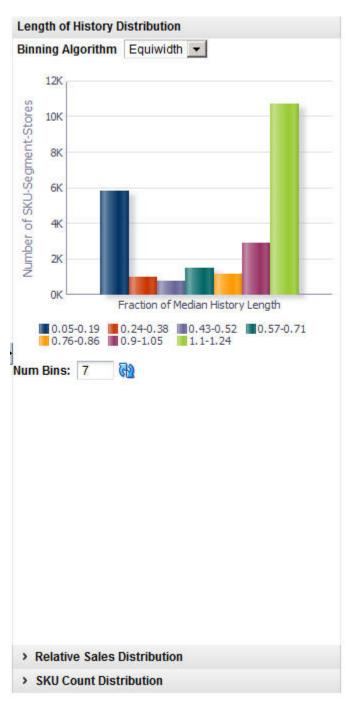
Histogram Name	Description
Length of History Distribution	Displays the percentage of median history length relative to the number of SKU-segment-stores.



Histogram Name	Description
Relative Sales Distribution	Displays the percentage of median category sales relative to the number of SKU-segment-stores.
SKU Count Distribution	Displays the percentage of the median category SKU count relative to the number of segment-stores.

Table 3-10 (Cont.) Data Filtering Histograms







# Similarity Calculation

Similarity in demand can be determined using either transaction-based data or attribute data. You can calculate the similarity using each type of data, if both types are available. You can only view the most recent run in the UI, so in order to compare runs, you must query the database to obtain the results from earlier runs.

Each category has its own set of similarities, relevant to the SKUs that are in that category. A similarity is calculated for each pair of historical SKUs in a category.

If transaction-based similarities are available, it is recommended that you use them instead of attribute-based similarities. Note that transaction-based similarities are only available through the Customer Decision Tree application.

#### Process

Here is the high-level process for calculating similarities:

- 1. Enter a unique name for the version of the DT model to be calculated.
- 2. Select the source of the data to be used: transaction-based or attributed-based. Transaction-based data is only available from the Customer Decision Tree generation.
- 3. Use the check boxes to indicate whether or not only top-level processing should occur for location or customer segment.
- 4. Customize the ranking of the category attributes if necessary.
- 5. Click Run to start the calculation.
- 6. Review the calculation results in the Similarity Display.
- 7. After reviewing the results, if necessary, make changes to the values for the calculation in the Version Setup and Category Attribute Setup and then re-run the stage.
- 8. When you are satisfied with the results, click **Next** to go to the Elasticity Calculation stage.

### Version Setup

At the top of this stage you see two text boxes and two check boxes that you use to configure the parameters for the calculation.

#### Figure 3-10 DT Version Setup

Version Setup			
* Version Name	Coffee Attr2	Process Location Top Level Only	
* Select the source of	Attribute-based	Process Customer Segment Top Level Only	
similarities			



Field Name	Field Description
Version Name	Assign a name to each version of a DT model calculation. This allows you to create and save more than one version of a DT model. The version name you assign here is used in the Calculation Report, Aggregate Statistics table, and in the Manage DTs tab. Version names can be re-used; however, if the version name in question has active DT models, then you will see a warning that the active DT models will be removed from the version if you do re-use the version name.
Select the Source of Similarities	Use this option to define the type of data used in the calculation: transaction data or attribute data. Transaction-based data uses similarities calculated by Customer Decision Tree using transaction-based data. Attribute-based data calculates similarities within DT based on the attribute values associated with every SKU in the category.
Process Location Top Level Only	Check this option if you want DT models to be calculated for the Location Chain <i>only</i> . You can select this option in order to decrease the amount of time it takes the system to perform the calculation.
Process Customer Segment Top Level Only	Check this option if you want DT models to be calculated for the Customer Segment Chain <i>only</i> . You can select this option in order to decrease the amount of time it takes the system to perform the calculation.

#### Table 3-11 Version Setup: Fields

Once you select the source for the similarities, you will see either Category Attribute Setup, if you have selected to use attribute-based similarities, or Transaction-based Similarity Availability Per Category, if you have selected to use transaction-based similarities.

### Category Attribute Setup

The application, using historical data, determines a specific weight for the category attributes. You can optionally change this weight and assign your own weight to the attributes for a category.

The weights indicate the importance of the attribute to the customers when they are making purchasing decisions. The attribute with the highest weight is the one the customer considers first when making a purchase. The system-generated weights are determined by the application from historical sales data. However, if a user disagrees with those weights, the user can override them. For example, in the case of coffee, the system may assign a weight of 0.7 to brand and 0.2 to size. This indicates that brand is historically more important to the customer than size when purchasing coffee. If the user disagrees with this analysis and thinks that brand and size are actually much closer together, the user can assign a weight of 0.5 to brand and 0.4 to size.

The Category Attribute Setup table displays the following:

### Figure 3-11 DT Category Attribute Setup

View - 🛃	🥒 🚯		7
ID 🔺 🗸	Name	Attributes	
70000	Pasta		
10000	Coffee	BrandTier FormatSize ManufacturingProcess Private Label Roast Segment SubCategory SubSegment	Trac

Highlight the category you want to adjust the weights for and click the **Edit** icon. You see the Category Attributes Setup dialog box.

### Figure 3-12 DT Category Attribute Setup

			7
User-overridden weight 🕑	System- generated weight (2)	Functional Fit Attribute?	
			:
			_
		weight generated	generated Fit

Table 3-12 Category Attributes Setup

Field	Description
ID	An external code used to identify the category in other systems such as CMPO.
Name	The category name.
Attribute	The specific attribute you are configuring.



The Category Attributes Setup pop-up lists the categories you are calculating DT models for. The system-assigned weights are also displayed. You can adjust the weight for all the attributes or a subset of the attributes.

The Category Attributes Setup dialog box contains the following fields. For each attribute you want to assign a custom weight to, enter a number between 0.000 and 1.000. For attributes that have no substitutes (such as windshield wipers of a specific length), the Functional Fit check box is checked by the system, so that similarities are not calculated for these attributes. When you are finished configuring the category attributes, click **OK**.

Table 3-13 Category Attribute Setup Fields

Field	Description
Attribute	The category attribute to assign a weight to.
User-Overridden Weight	The user-defined weight for the attribute.
System-Generated Weight	The system-generated weight for the attribute.
Functional Fit Attribute?	This is checked by the system if the attribute has no substitutes.

After you have finished configuring the similarity parameters, click **Run** to calculate the similarities. You see the results via the Similarity display table.

### Transaction-Based Similarity Availability Per Category

The Transaction-Based Similarity table displays the following:

Field	Description
ID	An external code used to identify the category in other systems such as CMPO.
Name	The category name.
Description	A description that provides additional information about the category.
Available	A flag that indicates that a CDT version that contains data for this category has been made active.
Available As Of	Indicates the date that the CDT version was activated. This information can help you identify whether the CDT results are recent, or if they are potentially too old to use. For example, if the CDT data became available two years ago, you may consider that data to be out of date.

Table 3-14 Transaction-Based Similarity Availability Per Category

### Similarity Display

The Similarity Display table shows the list of SKUs for which similarities have been calculated so that you can sort and analyze the results. You can search through the list of results by Category Name, Location, or Customer Segment.

Click the **Refresh** icon to update the fields and see the latest information in this table.



### Figure 3-13 DT Similarity Display

<ul> <li>Similarity E</li> </ul>	splay			
Category Nar	e Coffee 💽 Location North	Customer Segment CHAIN	G2	
View -	60			
Mar. The			Significant	

#### Table 3-15 Similarity Display

Field	Description
ID	An external code used to identify the category in other systems such as CMPO.
Product Name	The name identifying the product.
Product Description	A detailed description of the product.
Significant Products	A list of products that have High or Very High similarity. The threshold for how many products are considered significant can be configured in the database.
Average Sales Units	The average number of units used in the calculation.

Click the See Similarities icon to see detailed results for a specific set of SKUs.

The detailed results include the following fields:

Table 3-16	Similarity	<b>Display Results</b>
------------	------------	------------------------

Field Name	Field Description
ID	The product SKU.
Product Name	The name identifying the product.
Product Description	A detailed description of the product.
Similarity Strength	An indication of the similarity for the product: Very High, High, Medium, Low, Very Low.
Similarity Value	The calculated value for the similarity, from 0 to 1. A higher value indicates a higher degree of similarity.
Similarity Code	The numeric value associated with the similarity: $4 = \text{Very High}$ , $3 = \text{High}$ , $2 = \text{Medium}$ , $1 = \text{Low}$ , $0 = \text{Very Low}$ .

When you are satisfied with the Similarity results, click **Next** to go to the Elasticity Calculation stage.

## **Elasticity Calculation**

During the Elasticity Calculation stage, the assortment elasticity is calculated. You do not configure any parameters. Click **Run** to initiate the calculation.

The assortment elasticity should not be a positive value because the transference model does not work properly if the value is positive. In addition, it should not be a null value because a null value indicates that the calculation of assortment elasticity failed and did not



produce an assortment elasticity value. If an assortment elasticity value is positive, it must be replaced with a negative value. The replacement occurs during the escalation process.

#### Process

The elasticity calculation is a background process. You use this stage to view the results. Note that the substitutable demand information is displayed and the percentages for the DT models are calculated after you set the time intervals within the Manage Models tab.

### **Calculation Report**

The Calculation Report lists the status of the elasticity calculation and the exclusion, either by Location or by Customer Segment. An assortment elasticity is calculated for each category/location/segment combination selected during the Data Setup stage and the Calculation stage. The numerical result of the calculation, an output of DT generation, is used by Manage Models to calculate substitutable demand percentages.

### Figure 3-14 DT Calculation Report

lersion Coffe	e Attr2					
By Location	By Customer Segment					
View -	- GD					2   幕 積 🖞
Node		Calculation Status	Exclusion Status	Assortment Elasticity	Creation Date	Created By User
- Coffee						
> e-comm	erce USA					
> Spaces	Grocery					
> Spaces	Grocery					
> North						

The Calculation Report has two tabs: By Location and By Customer Segment. Each tab has the following fields:

Table 3-17 Calculation Report Fields

Field	Description
Node	The node tree structure can be expanded in order to view its categories
Calculation Status	Indicates whether or not (Yes/No) the elasticity calculation has occurred.
Exclusion Status	Indicates whether or not (Yes/No) pruning has occurred.
Creation Date	The date when the version whose data is displayed was created.
Created By User	The login name of the person who created the version.
Assortment Elasticity	A number calculated by the application that is a parameter in the DT model. A larger magnitude indicates larger overall transference.



## **Pruning Report**

The Pruning Report displays statistics about the results of data pruning.

Nun	nber of models generated	60				
	lumber of models pruned	2				
	es with all models pruned					
View -	Ð					7
ilter Nam	e				Number of models pruned	
Positive or	Null Assortment Elasticity				2	
View -	B					7
	1		Min Substitutable Demand	Max Substitutable Demand	Avg Substitutab Demand	le
Substituta	ble Demand					

Figure 3-15 DT Pruning Report

The Pruning Report contains the following fields:

Table 3-18 Pruning Report Fields

Field	Description
Number of Models Generated	The number of DT models produced by the calculation.
Number of Models Pruned	The number of DT models pruned by the calculation.
Categories with All Models Pruned	The names of the categories for which all DT models have been pruned.
Positive or Null Assortment Elasticity	The Assortment Elasticity (AE) value is a negative number used in calculating substitutable demand percentages and demand transference effects. A positive AE value may be produced as a result of missing or unreliable input data for some partitions. Such meaningless transference effects must be pruned. In addition, if a null AE value is generated, it must also be pruned.
Substitutable Demand	Substitutable demand is a measure of how much demand is retained by the rest of the assortment when an item that is removed. When the item is removed, a portion of its demand is transferred to the remainder of items in the assortment. These values are populated when you set up the time intervals in the Manage Models tab and run the calculation there.

## Assortment Elasticity Histogram

Figure 3-16 shows the DT Assortment Elasticity Histogram.

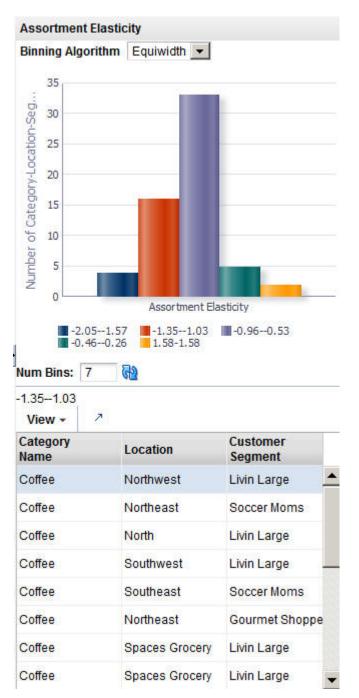


Figure 3-16 DT Assortment Elasticity Histogram

### **Escalation**

The Escalation stage is used to fill in the holes for partitions whose DT models were removed during pruning by setting up a search path through the customer segment hierarchy and the location hierarchy. The DT models used to fill in the holes are not used by Manage Models calculations.



### Process

Here is the high-level process for setting up an escalation.

- 1. Enter a series of numbers to indicate the escalation rank, which determines the order in which the escalation occurs.
- 2. Click Run to start the escalation process.
- 3. Review the escalation results in the Escalation Report.
- 4. After reviewing the results, if necessary, make changes to the escalation ranks and re-run the stage.
- 5. When you are satisfied with the results, you can complete the version and make the version active so that it is available for other applications to use.

### Setup Escalation

Escalation occurs along the customer segment hierarchy and the location hierarchy. Here is an example of an escalation path:

### Figure 3-17 DT Setup Escalation

View -	野		
Customer Segment Level	Location Level	Escalation Rank	
CHAIN	COMPANY	7	
CHAIN	CHAIN	5	
CHAIN	AREA	3	
CHAIN	REGION	1	
SEGMENT	COMPANY	6	
SEGMENT	CHAIN	4	
SEGMENT	AREA	2	

The following fields are required to set up the escalation.

#### Table 3-19 Setup Escalation

Field	Description
Customer Segment Level	Identifies the customer segment level in the escalation.
Location Level	Identifies the location level in the escalation.
Escalation Rank	Used to assign the ranks for the escalation, which determines the order in which the escalation occurs.

Here is an example of an escalation path.



Segment Level	Location Level	Escalation Rank
Segment chain	Location chain	8
Segment chain	Region	7
Segment chain	Location area	6
Segment chain	Store cluster	5
Segments	Location chain	4
Segments	Region	3
Segments	Location area	2
Segments	Store cluster	1

Table 3-20	Example of Escalation Path
------------	----------------------------

You fill in the order of numbers. Every row must have an ordering number, and no ordering number can be re-used.

The escalation path is specific to the user and the current version that the user is working on.

The default ordering is to go up the location hierarchy first, and then up the segment hierarchy, as shown in the example above. The reason is that the segment hierarchy has only two levels, and so its top level is very general.

### **Escalation Report**

The Escalation Report breaks down the numbers to provide counts for the number of positions filled with higher-level DT models and the number of partitions that have not been changed by escalation. In addition, the fraction of DT models for each partition is displayed.

<ul> <li>Escalat</li> </ul>	ion Report				6
Number of Number of	partitions :	sourced fro	m escalation 1 m calculation 24 rce 0		
View -	3				B / 7
Customer Segment Level	Lo	cation vel	Number of models	Percentages	
SEGMENT	RE	GION	24	96%	-
CHAIN	RE	GION	1	4%	
SEGMENT	AR	EA	0	0%	
CHAIN	AR	EA	0	0%	
SEGMENT	CH	IAIN	0	0%	
CHAIN	CH	IAIN	0	0%	_
SEGMENT	0	MPANY	0	0%	

Figure 3-18 DT Escalation Report



Field Name	Description
Total Number of Partitions	The number of partitions in the version.
Number of Partitions Sourced from Escalation	The number of partitions removed during escalation.
Number of Partitions Sourced from Calculation	The number of partitions removed during calculation.
Number of Partitions with No Source	A partition that does not have a model assigned to it because all models related to the partition have been pruned.
Customer Segment Level	Identifies the customer segment level.
Location Level	Identifies the location level.
Number of Models	The number of partitions that are trying to have a model assigned. This is generally the number of customer segments by the number of locations.
Percentages	The percentage of partitions that have been assigned a model from a given escalation level.

#### Table 3-21 Escalation Report

### **Completion of Process**

When a version is complete, the results for the version are activated so that other applications can use the information. The similarity data that has been calculated during the generation process is also activated for use.

After the completion of this step, the intermediate results from each stage are removed from the database and can no longer be used.

Be aware that once a version is completed, it cannot be completed again unless a different version is completed first. Changes made to the version's data after completing it will not be copied to the relevant output tables.

## Manage Models Tab

You can set up various time intervals to use in the evaluation of a version of a DT and configure the value for maximum substitutable demand and see how different maximum values affect the substitutable demand. This allows you to change the maximum value to one you find more suitable. You can see the percentage of demand of a SKU that is retained when the SKU is deleted from the stores where it is selling. This is the substitutable demand percentage. In this way you can evaluate the accuracy and usability of the elasticity calculation.

Substitutable demand is a measure of how much demand is retained by the rest of the assortment when an item is removed. When the item is removed, a portion of its demand is transferred to the remainder of items in the assortment. This portion is considered the retained demand. If the magnitude of the assortment elasticity is larger, then the amount retained will be higher. By examining the retained demand, you can evaluate the assortment elasticity value to see if its magnitude is too large. The key value to examine is the maximum substitutable demand percentage. For a given category, you may decide that this value is too large.



#### Process

Here is the high-level process for determining suitable substitutable demand values and thus suitable DT models.

- Set up the time intervals you are interested in.
- Select the versions you want to evaluate.
- Click the **Calculate** icon to obtain an initial set of percentages.
- Enter various values for maximum substitutable demand and use the Edit icon to enter override values for Maximum Substitutable Demand Percent and the Calculate icon to determine the impact.
- You can use the **Revert** icon to restore the original percentage values.
- When you are satisfied with the results, you can choose which version to make active using the **Set Version as Complete** icon.

### Time Interval Setup

The time interval defines the span of time for the sales history to be used to determine the amount of history that is retained when SKUs are dropped. A group of intervals can be defined. Gaps between intervals are permitted; however, intervals cannot overlap.

#### Figure 3-19 DT Setup Time Interval

/iew - 🛃	+ ×			
Fiscal Year	Fiscal Period		Start	End
2010 💌	Fiscal Week	-	2010WEEK -	2010WEEK -

You should select a time interval for which the historical assortments are reasonably representative of the assortments that will be used in the CMPO application. Because the time interval is used to calculate the substitutable demand information, selecting a representative interval provides substitutable demand information that is highly relevant to the actual application of demand transference in CMPO. Typically, the most representative time period is a recent time interval, since that is generally when assortments are most similar to the current assortments. If you use a time period that is not recent, you run the risk of using assortments that are not as similar to the current ones. You should also make sure not to select an interval that is too large, because a large interval necessarily includes several assortment changes within that interval. An interval size of approximately four weeks is recommended.

The fields that define a time interval are:



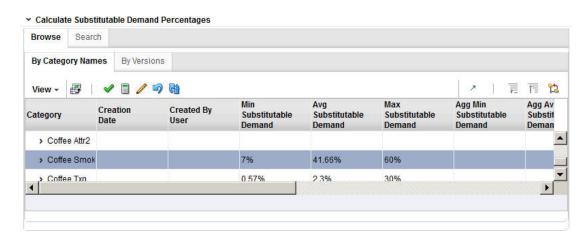
Field Name	Field Description
Fiscal Year	The fiscal year for the time interval.
Fiscal Period	The fiscal period within the fiscal year (Fiscal Quarter, Fiscal Period, or fiscal Week).
Start	The time unit when the time interval specified in Fiscal Period begins.
End	The time unit when the time interval specified in Fiscal Period ends.

Table 3-22 Setup Time Interval: Fields

## Calculate Substitutable Demand Percentages

You can vary the value for the maximum substitutable demand percentage and see the impact on selected categories or versions.

Figure 3-20 DT Calculate Substitutable Demand Percentages



### **Browsing and Searching**

You can browse by Category Names or by Versions. You can also search by name or by creation user. You see the following DT model data displayed:

Table 3-23 Browsing

Field Name	Description
Category/Version	The name of the category.
Creation Date	The date when the version was created.
Created By User	The user name of the person who created this version.
Min Substitutable Demand	The percentage value for the minimum substitutable demand.
Avg Substitutable Demand	The percentage value for the average substitutable demand.
Max Substitutable Demand	The percentage value for the maximum substitutable demand.
Agg Min Substitutable Demand	The aggregated value for the minimum substitutable demand.



Field Name	Description
Agg Avg Substitutable Demand	The aggregated value for the average substitutable demand.
Agg Max Substitutable Demand	The aggregated value for the maximum substitutable demand.
Calculation Status	Indication of whether or not (Yes/No) the calculation is complete.
Completion Status	Indication of whether or not (Yes/No) the status is active.
Completion Date	The date when the status became active.
Completion User	The user name of the person who activated the version.

Table 3-23	(Cont.) Browsing
------------	------------------

Once you make a selection, click the **Edit** icon and enter an override value between 0% and 100% for the Maximum Substitutable Demand Percent. Click the **Calculate** icon to initiate the calculation. To revert the calculation, click the **Revert** icon.

Once you have determined the substitutable demand value you want, you can click the **Complete** icon to make the version active.

## **Escalation Report**

The Escalation Report breaks down the numbers to provide counts for the number of positions filled with higher-level DT models and the number of partitions that have not been changed by escalation. In addition, the fraction of DT models for each partition is displayed.

#### Figure 3-21 DT Escalation Report

```
    Escalation Report

                                                                                                                                      6
Total number of partitions 25
Number of partitions sourced from escalation 25
Number of partitions sourced from calculation 0
Number of partitions with no source 0
 View -
                                                                                                                                     7
Customer
                  Location
                                    Number of
                                                      Percentages
Segment
                                    models
                  Level
Level
SEGMENT
                                                      0%
                  REGION
                                    0
CHAIN
                  REGION
                                    0
                                                      0%
SEGMENT
                  AREA
                                    0
                                                      0%
CHAIN
                  AREA
                                    0
                                                      0%
SEGMENT
                  CHAIN
                                    0
                                                      0%
CHAIN
                  CHAIN
                                    0
                                                      0%
SEGMENT
                  COMPANY
                                                      0%
                                    0
                                                                                                                                      •
```



Table 3-24	Escalation Report
------------	-------------------

Field Name	Description
Total Number of Partitions	The number of partitions in the version.
Number of Partitions Sourced from Escalation	The number of partitions removed during escalation.
Number of Partitions Sourced from Calculation	The number of partitions removed during calculation.
Number of Partitions with No Source	A partition that does not have a model assigned to it because all models related to the partition have been pruned.
Customer Segment Level	Identifies the customer segment level.
Location Level	Identifies the location level.
Number of Models	The number of partitions that are trying to have a model assigned. This is generally the number of customer segments by the number of locations.
Percentages	The percentage of partitions that have been assigned a model from a given escalation level.

## Histogram

The Substitutable Demand Distribution histogram displays the distribution of the substitutable demand values for SKU/stores.



# 4 Advanced Clustering

This chapter describes the Advanced Clustering Cloud Service module.

## Introduction

Advanced Clustering is an enterprise-specific clustering solution that uses data mining to create store groupings at different product levels using a variety of inputs. These inputs include performance data (sales dollars, sales units, and gross profit), product attributes (brand, color, and size/fit), store attributes (climate, store format, size, and servicing distribution center), third-party data such as demographics (income, ethnicity, and population density), and customer segments.

The application's embedded science and automation helps you to identify unique patterns within your data that you can use to create the necessary customer-centric and targeted clusters. These can be used by the assortment planning, allocation and replenishment, pricing, and promotion processes.

It optimizes clusters in order to determine the minimum number of clusters that best describes the historical data used in the analysis and that best meets your business objectives, which you define during the design of your clusters.

You can use Advanced Clustering to execute localized or customer-centric assortments and for pricing. In addition, the application can help you when forecasting, for example, if you want to cluster stores based on similar seasonal patterns. You can also use the application for allocation, by clustering stores based on similar selling patterns.

## Features

The key features of Advanced Clustering Cloud Service include:

- Scenario-based cluster generation, based on store or product attributes, customer segment profiles, or performance.
- Three-step cluster-generation process.
- What-if capabilities that can be used to create multiple clustering scenarios and then measure them against one another. This can help ensure that the most appropriate clusters are used by the applicable planning and execution processes.
- Automatic ranking of cluster scenarios to support what-if comparisons.
   Recommendations for the optimal cluster scenario and number of clusters are provided.
- Dynamic nesting of clusters, in which nested or mixed attribute clusters are created based on multiple attributes, performance data, and customer segments.
- Two types of algorithms are used.
  - Proprietary BaNG (Batch Neural Gas) algorithm for convergent cluster parameters
  - K-means approach for creating clusters in a hierarchical manner, which automatically determines the best attributes to split into an additional cluster.



• A variety of distance metrics that are suitable for real-value attributes, categorical attributes, profile-based measurements, and time-based performance.

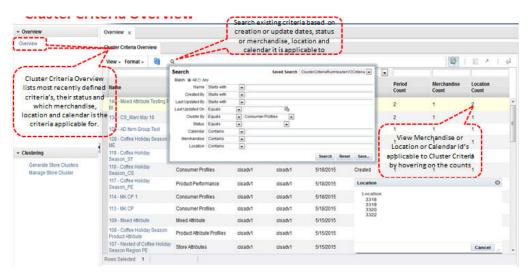
## **Overview of Advanced Clustering Process**

To use Advanced Clustering, follow this general process to create and manage clusters, working in the Generate Store Clusters tab and the Manage Store Clusters tab:

- Cluster Criteria. View all available clusters for specified merchandise, location, and calendar. Review cluster criteria or scenario details for each cluster. Use existing cluster as the basis for creating a new cluster.
- Explore Data. Examine the input data for the cluster. Review multiple data points and significant attributes using the contextual information.
- Cluster Setup. Define multiple what-if scenarios. Such scenarios can be compared with one another throughout the clustering process.
- Cluster Results. View the scenario results and compare scenarios.
- Cluster Insights. Gain an understanding about cluster results and cluster performance prior to approval by examining the contextual information.
- Manage Store Clusters. Manage existing cluster criteria. Perform manual overrides and approve clusters.

## **Cluster Criteria Overview Tab**

The Cluster Criteria Overview tab displays a list of the most recently defined cluster criteria and provides the status, clustering criteria, applicable merchandise, location, and calendar nodes. You can click on the criteria name in order to access it within the Generate Store Clusters tab.



#### Figure 4-1 Cluster Criteria Overview Tab



Field	Description
Name	The criteria ID and user-assigned name of the cluster.
Cluster By	A predefined group of attributes that include Consumer Profile, Product Performance, Store Attribute, Product Attribute, and Mixed Attribute. These criteria types are sets of attributes. For example, store attributes are the properties of a store. These properties can include ethnicity, store format, and store size.
Created By	The name of the user who created the cluster.
Last Updated By	The name of the user who most recently updated the cluster.
Last Updated On	The date when the cluster was most recently updated.
Status	Created, Ready for Approval, Completed with Errors, Approved, Rejected.
Period Count	The number of calendar nodes defined for the criteria. Hover over the count in order to see a list of the calendar keys associated with the criteria.
Merchandise Count	The number of merchandise nodes defined for the criteria. Hover over the count in order to see a list of the merchandise keys associated with the criteria.
Location Count	The number of location nodes defined for the criteria. Hover over the count in order to see a list of the location keys associated with the criteria.

#### Table 4-1 Cluster Criteria Overview Tab

## **Clustering Criteria**

The following clustering criteria (which are also called "Cluster by") are the defaults:

#### **Consumer Profile**

Cluster stores based on the similarities in the customer profile mix whose members shop in the stores or trading areas. These clusters form the basis for additional analysis that can provide an understanding of which customers shop in which stores and how they shop. Information from market research firms such as the Nielsen Corporation can help retailers develop customer profiles. Such information can be provided via a data interface.

#### **Location Attributes**

Cluster stores based on how shopping behavior varies by store attribute. In combination with the profile mix, this provides an understanding of demographic details such as income level, ethnicity, education, household size, and family characteristics. Such knowledge can help the retailer to make assortment and pricing decisions. By analyzing cluster composition and studying business intelligence, the retailer can make informed decisions based on shopper demographics.

#### **Product Attributes**

Store share is generated based on product attributes. The store clusters produced can be used in an assortment. In this type of cluster, stores with a similar share of sales for one or more attributes are grouped together. For example, for the product coffee, stores can be differentiated by the sales patterns for premium, standard, and niche brands. The percentage of each store contribution is calculated using Sales Retail \$ for each product attribute value to



the total sales retail for the category or subcategory in a specified location. Product attributes can only be configured at the category or subcategory level.

#### **Performance Criteria**

Cluster stores based on the historical sales metrics by performance at various merchandise levels. Determine how shopping behavior varies by category. This information can be helpful in identifying low, medium, and high-volume stores that all have similar sales patterns.

### **Mixed Criteria**

Mixed criteria combine discrete and continuous attributes together. This allows a retailer to cluster stores using attributes from all the first four listed cluster criteria at the same time.

## Generate Store Clusters Tab

The Generate Store Clusters tab is used to create clusters and then model the clusters with various scenarios in order to determine the best clusters. It consists of three stages: Cluster Criteria, Cluster Results, and Cluster Insights.

### Figure 4-2 Generate Store Clusters Tab

Overview	Overview × Generate Store Clusters ×										
Oveniew	Defined 3 Step Process Enabling A Synchronous Approach To Clustering	}	Cluster Criteria Clus	G Cluster II	sights	ext Explore Da	ta Action +	Canco			
	Filters Merchandise 10000 - Coffee - Locatio										
	Actions - View - 2 75 12	Actions -	View -					1.9			
	/ 🕑 👷 🕪 🖌 🖉 🗶 🖉 🖉	I.T.		1	11						
	Coffee Holiday Season Product Attribute Coffee Holiday Season Region PE Nested of Coffee Holiday Season Region PE	Parent Cluster Level 1	Parent Cluster Level 2	Name	Status	# of Attributes	Max # of Clusters				
lustering	A Nested of Nested of Collee Holiday Seaso	A	ST_Cluster_01	Primary Scenario	1 Ready for Approval	5	100	1			
Generate Store Clusters Manage Store Cluster		A.	ST_Cluster_02	Primary Scenario	Keady for Approval	5	100	1			
manage clore cruster		2 A	ST_Cluster_03	Primary Scenario	Keady for Approval	5	100	1			
		A	ST_Cluster_04	Primary Scenario	Seady for Approval	5	100	1			
		A	ST_Cluster_05	Primary Scenario	📢 Ready for Approval	5	100	1			
		В	ST_Cluster_01	Primary Scenario	Keady for Approval	5	100	1			
		8	ST_Cluster_02	Primary Scenario	Keady for Approval	5	100	1			
		в	ST_Cluster_03	Primary Scenario	Keady for Approval	5	100	1			
		141		in .							

### **Cluster Criteria Stage**

In this stage, you can view summary data about existing clusters and define the characteristics of new clusters.

#### Process

Here is the high-level process for defining a cluster.

- 1. Provide a unique name for the cluster.
- 2. Define the type of data used to characterize the cluster.
- 3. Select merchandise and location nodes.
- 4. Define the time period for the cluster.



5. Define the historical time period for the data.

### All Cluster Criteria

In this area of the page you can view information about existing clusters.

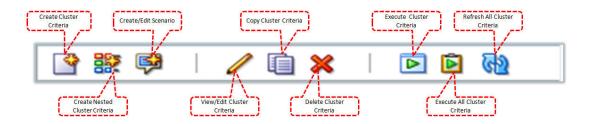
Use the View list to select existing cluster criteria. You can tailor your search for existing clusters by Merchandise, Location, and Calendar. Once you select a cluster, the defining details for that cluster are displayed in the Worksheet area.

### Figure 4-3 All Cluster Criteria

Defined 3 St Enabling AS Approach To Cluster Criteria	ynchronous		Chuster Criteria (	Cluster Results Cluster Insia	onts		fack Next	Explore Data	Action + Cancel
itters Merchandise 10000 - Coffee 3	Location	1 - Spaces Reta		Calendar Christmas / No	2000 II.(				input data throug steps of cluster generation
<ul> <li>Coffee Holiday Season</li> <li>Nested of Coffee Holiday Season</li> </ul>	Parent Cluster Level 1	Parent Cluster Level 2		form Cluster Crite Create a new Clus		The second second second second		System Preferred	User Proferred
liested of Nested of Cottee Holiday Season	ST_Cluster_01	PA_Cluster_01	Primary 2	Create nested Clu		ria		-145-	-N/A-
	ST_Cluster_01	PA_Cluster_02		Create/Edit Scena			00000	-164-	-14/4-
	ST_Cluster_01	PA_Cluster_03		Edit/Delete/Copy Execute/Execute/			rcny	-104-	100-
List All Available Clusters for a	Cluster_02	PA_Cluster_01	Primary Scenano		P	100	_	-104-	-1404-
defined Merchandise, Location	Cluster_02	PA_Cluster_02	Primary Scenario	SReady for Approval	5	100	1	104	2404
and Calendar Review Cluster Criteria For Each	Chuster_02	PA_Cluster_03	Primary Scenario	S Ready for Approval	5	100	1	-16/4-	100-
and/or Use As A Basis For the	Cluster_03	PA_Cluster_01	Primary Scenario	Neady for Approval	5	100	1	-1408-	1404-
Creation Of New Clusters	Chuster_03	PA_Cluster_02	Primary Scenario	S Ready for Approval	5	100	1	-164-	144-
STREET CONTRACTOR OF THE STREET AND THE STO	ST_Cluster_03	PA_Cluster_03	Primary Scenario	S Reads for Approval		100	1	-104-	144

In addition, you can use the toolbar buttons to:

### Figure 4-4 All Cluster Criteria Toolbar



- Create a cluster criteria. You can define an initial cluster. The criteria include cluster name, the category for the cluster, the effective date for the cluster, and the history to use.
- Created a nested cluster criteria. In this way you can subdivide an existing cluster in
  order to analyze it further. Once you create a nested cluster, the name "Nested of <name
  of original cluster>" appears in the Cluster Criteria area. You can then define its
  characteristics in the same way you define any cluster.
- Create or edit a scenario. Modify the configured primary scenario or create another scenario to perform what-if analysis for a selected cluster criteria.

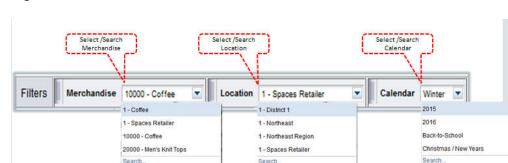


- View or edit a cluster criteria. The characteristics of the cluster are displayed in the Cluster Criteria pop-up.
- Copy a cluster criteria. Once you have copied it, you can modify it. •
- Delete a cluster criteria. Delete the selected cluster criteria.
- Execute a cluster criteria. Execute all non-executed scenarios for the selected criteria.
- Execute all cluster criteria. Execute the entire cluster hierarchy criteria for the selected criteria at once.
- Refresh all. Refresh all cluster criteria in order to view any updates to the existing cluster criteria.

### All Cluster Criteria Filter

The All Cluster Criteria filter provides the following:

- Merchandise allows the user to filter the existing cluster criteria by searching for or • selecting the merchandise for the supported hierarchies.
- Location allows the user to filter the existing cluster criteria by searching for or selecting the location for the supported hierarchies.
- Calendar allows the user to filter the existing cluster criteria by searching for or selecting the calendar for the supported hierarchies.



Search.

### Figure 4-5 All Cluster Criteria Filter

Search

### All Cluster Criteria Summary

Once you have highlighted a cluster criteria to examine, details about that cluster criteria are displayed in a pop-up. The details include information about the cluster criteria and the scenarios created for that cluster criteria.



Field Name	Description
Cluster By	A predefined group of attributes that include Consumer Profile, Product Performance, Store Attribute, Product Attribute, and Mixed Attribute. These criteria types are sets of attributes. For example, store attributes are the properties of a store. These properties can include ethnicity, store format, and store size.
Shared Criteria	A check mark indicates that more than one merchandise or location node is used in the cluster criteria.
Merchandise Type	The merchandise type.
Scenario Created	The number of scenarios created for the cluster.
Scenario Executed	The number of scenarios executed for the cluster.
Location Type	The location type.
Parent Cluster Level	The name of the ancestor cluster that has been further clustered.

#### Table 4-2 Pop-Up Details

### All Cluster Criteria Scenario List

This displays the scenarios for the selected cluster criteria in the All Cluster Criteria tree.

Field Name	Description
Name	The name assigned to each scenario that has been created for the cluster.
Status	Created, Ready for Approval, Completed with Errors, Approved, Rejected.
User Preferred	Indicates whether or not the user prefers the cluster.
System Preferred	Indicates whether or not the system prefers the cluster.
# of Attributes	The number of attributes that were used in the cluster.
Max. # of Clusters	A user-provided value for the maximum clusters centers that the clustering process should consider.

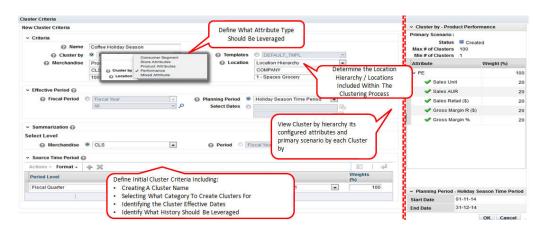
Table 4-3 Scenario List

### **Cluster Criteria**

In this pop-up, you define the initial clustering parameters for the cluster criteria of a new cluster. Note that multiple hierarchies are supported in order to facilitate comparisons between clusters. For example, you can compare clusters for the market and retail location hierarchy.

Figure 4-6 illustrates how to use a simple approach to clustering by selecting attributes from a Cluster by. For example, you can select the performance Cluster by and generate clusters using store sales units or revenue.





#### Figure 4-6 Cluster Criteria

Figure 4-7 illustrates the use of a nested approach to clustering. Select a Cluster by hierarchy using the dynamic hierarchy pop-up or the pre-configured template hierarchies. For example, you can first create a cluster using the performance Cluster by and then further cluster using location attributes.

#### Figure 4-7 Cluster Criteria - Selection

New Cluster Criteria Select cluster		er by hierarchy reation.	Cluster by te cluster hiera creation.		for Cluster by Hierarchy Cluster by	_
Name Coffee Holiday Season     Coffee Holiday Season     Cluster by     Product Performan		@ Templates	5	¥	<ul> <li>Product Perform Historical point of sales performance metrics Store attributes that prov</li> </ul>	ide i
Define Cluster-by Hierarchy	tent (	Location	Search and Select: Clustering Temp	late	<ul> <li>Store Attribut variability and commons</li> </ul>	0
Criteria Level 1: Product Performance Criteria Level 2: Store Attributes	•		Search Match @ All () Any		Advance	in the sified
Criteria Level 3: Consumer Profiles	OK Cancel	Planning Period Select Dates	Name % Merchandise Hierarchy <no selec<br="">Merchandise Level <no selec<br="">Merchandise Level <no selec<="" td=""><td>tion&gt;</td><td></td><td></td></no></no></no>	tion>		
UK Cancel		<u>.</u>	Name	Merchandise	Merchandise Hierarchy	
			MAIN_ALL_PROD_HIER	ALL	ALL	
<ul> <li>✓ Summarization </li> </ul>			DEFAULT_TMPL	ALL	ALL	э.
Select Level			MAIN_3_LEVEL_HER_PROD_FL. MAIN_4_LEVEL_HER_PROD_FL.	ALL	ALL Product Hierarchy	-
Merchandise     CMP		Period O	MAIN DEPT STORE	ALL	Product Hierarchy	
<ul> <li>✓ Source Time Period</li></ul>			MAIN_SINGLE_PROD_DEPT	ALL	Product Hierarchy	
Actions - Format - + X			MAIN_SINGLE_PROD	ALL	Product Hierarchy	
Period Level	Start Period	En	d		OK Cance	
Fiscal Year	2015	. 20	015 💌		100 V Planning Period - Christmas / New Years Start Date 28-11-16	-
					End Date 02-01-17	

The following information defines a cluster:

Table 4-4 New Cluster Definition

Field Name	Description
Name	A unique name to identify the cluster.



Field Name	Description
Cluster By	A predefined group of attributes that include Consumer Profile, Product Performance, Store Attribute, Product Attribute, and Mixed Attribute. These criteria types are sets of attributes. For example, store attributes are the properties of a store. These properties can include ethnicity, store format, and store size.
Merchandise	Once you choose the merchandise level for the cluster, you must select the hierarchy type, the hierarchy level, and the hierarchy node. These are specific to the merchandise level you select.
Location	Once you choose the location level for the cluster, you must select the hierarchy type, the hierarchy level, and the hierarchy node. These are specific to the location level you select.
Template	Select by name a predefined template that can be used to create a cluster hierarchy.

#### Table 4-4 (Cont.) New Cluster Definition

### **Effective Period**

You can define a time interval for the cluster by either choosing a period from the list provided or by selecting a start date and an end date.

To define the Effective Period, you select either Planning Period, Fiscal Period, or Select Date:

Option	Description
Fiscal Period	If you select this option, choose the period and the subdivisions of that period from the drop-down lists.
Planning Period	Select from the range of values provided for the period. Planning periods are user-defined buying periods for a season or a season subset.
Select Dates	If you select this option, choose the start and end dates using the calendar pop-up.

Table 4-5 Effective Period

### Summarization

Data summarization is available when you select the product performance Cluster by. Select the dimensions of the hierarchy (merchandise or calendar) to summarize the data and consider the dimension position in the clustering process. For example, when you use the category/week sales data to generate store clusters, you can select the week dimension in the calendar hierarchy summarization. The clustering process considers all weeks (week1, week2, ... week52) as attributes and clusters stores based on their weekly sales patterns.



New Cluster Criteria						Cluster by - Product P	erformance	
~ Criteria						PE		
- Name	Coffee Sales Trend					Sales Unit		
Cluster by	Product Perform		A O Ten	nplates O Cottae Consum	tier Profiles	Sales AUR		
Merchandise	Product Hierarchy			ocation Location Hierarchy		Sales Retail (\$)		
	CMP		1	COMPANY		Gross Margin R (\$)	N	
	1 - Spaces Retailer		2	1 - Spaces Retailer	<u>م ج</u>	Gross Margin %		
<ul> <li>Summarization</li></ul>	9 1040			ies in seasonal and se	G	Status Contract Status	oduct Performance nary Scenario reated	
Merchandise	C Ner							
						 tribute	Weight (%)	
Merchandise	2				lo   🔟	ales Retail (\$)	Weight (%)	10
Merchandise     Source Time Period	2	Start Period	En	id Period			Weight (%)	10
Merchandise Source Time Period  Actions - Format -	2	Start Period		d Period 016WEEX1	Weights (%)		Weight (%)	10

### Figure 4-8 Summarization

### Source Time Period

Select historical sales data for clustering and view contextual data to analyze cluster performance. You can specify more than one time period and assign different weights to different periods in order to place more or less emphasis on different periods.

Source time periods are available for all cluster criteria. With product and performance or mixed criteria, when performance metrics are used for clustering, these define the historical data used for the calculation. This time period also defines the historical data used to display BI when sales metrics are shown.

Field	Description
Period Level	Select from Fiscal Year, Fiscal Quarter, Fiscal Period, or Fiscal Week.
Start Period	Once you select the Period Level, you select the starting subdivision within that period.
End Period	Once you select the Period Level, you select the ending subdivision within that period.
Weight (%)	Used to define the weight given to the historical data from the defined time period.

#### Table 4-6 Source Time Period

### **Contextual Area**

When you are creating a new cluster criteria, you can see details about the following parameters that can help you understand the cluster you are creating.

### **Cluster By Hierarchy**

The following information is displayed when you select a template or use the icon to select the Cluster by hierarchy.

### Template



Property	Description				
Template Name	Name of template configured during deployment.				
Description	Description of template.				
Cluster By	A predefined group of attributes that include Consumer Profile, Product Performance, Store Attribute, Product Attribute, and Mixed Attribute. These criteria types are sets of attributes. For example, store attributes are the properties of a store. These properties can include ethnicity, store format, and store size.				

### Table 4-7 Template Display

### Hierarchy

A dynamic Cluster by hierarchy is displayed. For example, the template PE-ST-ST has a Cluster by hierarchy of performance/store attribute/store attribute.

### **Cluster By Primary Scenario**

You see this when you select Cluster by in the Criteria panel when you are setting the cluster parameters or when you select Cluster by in the contextual area for the hierarchy.

The attributes configured and the primary scenario properties defined for the selected cluster are displayed. The attributes listed are those that are significant for the clustering defined during deployment.

The primary scenario is the default scenario defined during deployment. The following information is displayed.

Property	Description
Name	The name of the primary scenario.
Status	Created, Ready for Approval, Completed with Errors, Approved, Rejected.
Maximum # clusters	The maximum number of clusters. The default value is 100. This is used for analyzing the clusters.
Minimum # clusters	The minimum number of clusters. The default value is 1. This is used for analyzing the clusters.
Attribute	A list of the attributes configured during clustering.
Attribute weight	The weights associated with each attribute. This is used to calculate distance.

#### Table 4-8 Primary Scenario

### **Planning Period**

This list displays the time period you selected for the cluster definition. This information is available only for planning periods, where it provides the start and end dates of the planning period. This content changes whenever planning period is selected in Effective Period when you are setting cluster parameters.

uster Criteria			-					
lew Cluster Criteria				luster by		<ul> <li>Cluster by Hie</li> </ul>	rarchy	
~ Criteria				y based on		Cluster by		
* Name	Coffee Holiday Season PE			selected by		- Product Perfo	rrr Historical point of sales performance metrics	
Cluster by	Product Performance	m 💌		O DEFAULT_TMPL	- <b>T</b>		Store attributes that provide	
Merchandise	Product Hierarchy		Location			<ul> <li>Store Attrib</li> </ul>	ut variability and commonality acros stores	JS [
	CMP			AREA			Consumer groups identified in th	
	1 - Spaces Retailer	• P		All	9 🗉		ne market share data either classifi oduct Performance	ad
✓ Effective Period				criteria to view		+ PE		1
Fiscal Period	D Fiscal Year	- 0	Dia	ant attributes		Sales Unit		
	All	- 0	contig	ured for each 🛛 👇	Long Land			
			C	luster by	24	Sales AUR		-
						Sales Reta	ill (\$)	
<ul> <li>Summarization ()</li> </ul>			Se	lect criteria to view		¥.	m	+
Select Level			Pr	imary Scenario, for		<ul> <li>Primary Scenary</li> </ul>	ario - Product Performance	
Merchandise	CMP		@ Perio E	ach Cluster by, to	2		e Primary Scenario	
			v	iew attributes and			s Created	
<ul> <li>Source Time Period Q</li> </ul>			s	enario properties		Max # of Cluster Min # of Cluster		
Actions - Format -	+ %				له I II	Attribute	Weight (%)	
Period Level		Start Period	En	d Period	Weights (%)	Sales Unit	(Togic (A)	2
Fiscal Year		2015	. 21	015	100			-
							d - Christmas / New Years	
						Start Date	28-11-16	
							02-01-17	

#### Figure 4-9 Contextual Information

## **Explore** Data

Use the Explore Data pop-up to examine data for the cluster you defined. You can view the store that provides input into the clustering process.

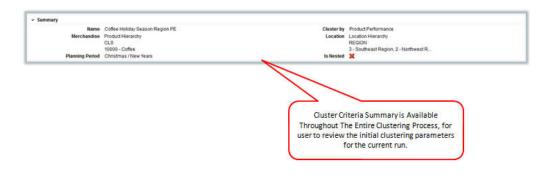
#### Process

In this pop-up you can only view the data, so the only actions you can perform are drilling down through the data in the table and altering the arrangement of the table.

### Summary

This area lists the criteria you initially selected to define the cluster.

Figure 4-10 Cluster Criteria Summary





Field	Description
Name	The name you provided for the cluster in the Cluster Criteria stage.
Cluster By	A predefined group of attributes that include Consumer Profile, Product Performance, Store Attribute, Product Attribute, and Mixed Attribute. These criteria types are sets of attributes. For example, store attributes are the properties of a store. These properties can include ethnicity, store format, and store size.
Merchandise	The merchandise level and nodes for the cluster.
Location	The location level and nodes for the cluster.
Fiscal Period	The time period for the cluster.
Is Nested	Indicates whether or not the cluster is nested within another cluster.
Merchandise Hierarchy Type	Provides details about which type of hierarchy the cluster criteria have been created for.

#### Table 4-9 Explore Data: Summary

### **View Stores**

This area displays a nested list of the stores in the cluster you have defined and data for each store for each of the relevant attributes for the Cluster by option you selected to define the cluster. You can see data at the aggregated level as well as at the individual level. Filters are provided so that you can filter the display, for example, by category. You can see aggregated data at a higher level as well as at the store level.

xplore Data				2.2					
> Summary			ation Attribute		1				
👸 Export -	each sto	10			8.0				
Filters	<u> </u>	~	V			$\rightarrow$ $\sim$		-	es.
	Sales Unit	Sales AUR	Sales Retail (\$)	Gross Margin R (S)	Carl Street and Street and Street	By Leveraging The Explore			ST - Custo
141 1 Springs	478,159	9.50	\$4 544 546 85	\$1,788,844,57		Are Able To Review Multip		sented	
Export All Stores and it		9.50	\$4,223,215,26	\$1,662,360,61		In A Contextu	Jal Manner		
attributes to Excel or	855	9.63	\$4,633,149,07	\$1.941.718.78		-bis to socializable -baseda	a The Dation of inter-	1940	
selected data	0.836	11.35	\$6,933,646,09	\$3.018.652.03		This Is Available Througho Proce		mg	
14 - 1061 Aurora	678.312	11.35	\$9,969,960,82	\$4,340,546,06	43.55		000	Weak	
3 - 1050 Rapid City	2.017.241	9.57	\$19,298,667.77	\$7,674,836,78	39.85	6 Moderate	Cold	Moderate	
10 - 1118 New Orleans	671.969	11.32	\$7,604,856.36	\$3,009,849,51	40.61	s Small	Hot	Strong	
8 - 1175 Davenport	1,138,309	9.42	\$10,717,984.36	\$4,157,435.01	38.81	4 Moderate	Cold	Moderate	
7 - 1084 Norflok	2,692,523	9.61	\$25,862,674,00	\$10,348,305.28	40.05	4 Moderate	Warm	Moderate	
9 - 1107 Jacksonville	1,526,415	11,10	\$15,943,734.62	\$7,282,940.77	43.05	6 Moderate	Hot	Moderate	
0 - 1027 Denver	1,600,997	11.21	\$17,951,157.01	\$7,760,991.20	43.25	4 Small	Warm	Strong	
- 1055 Mankato	1,978,108	11.04	\$21,847,595.34	\$9,363,372.76	42.95	6 Moderate	Cold	Wesk	
1 - 1187 Watertown	526,458	9.50	\$5,003,591.99	\$1,969,535.94	39.41	Moderate	Cold	Moderate	
2 - 1029 Eugene	1,606,753	11.10	\$17,835,510.12	\$7,666,253.44	43.05	% Moderate	Warm.	Moderate	
04 - 1112 Myrtle Beach	372,594	11.35	\$4,229,677.33	\$1,841,443.61	43.51	N Moderate	Hot	Wesk	
4 - 1190 Harrisburg	490,709	9.42	\$4,620,641.98	\$1,792,316.33	38.61	The Explore Data Vi	ew Allows Users	Moderate	
- 1007 Minneapolis	2,002,359	11,16	\$22,338,343.33	\$9,629,727.39	43.11	To Review Key KP	Is / Associated	Strong	
80 - 1047 Grand Forks	2,747,472	9.61	\$26,390,483.67	\$10,559,495.18	40.01	Attributes (Both Pro	duct & Location)	Moderate	
7 - 1054 Duluth	2,133,717	11.35	\$24,219,941.78	\$10,544,453.30	43.51	In A Quick & Ea	asy Manner	Weak	

### **Product Performance**

This section displays stores, store sales metrics, location attributes, customer profiles, and product attribute profiles.



Field	Description
Sales Unit	The sales units for the merchandise, location, and source time period selected when setting up clustering parameters.
Sales Average Unit Retail	The average unit retail sales for the merchandise, location, and source time period selected when setting up clustering parameters.
Sales Retail	The sales revenue for the selected merchandise, location, and source time period.
Gross Margin	The retail sales minus the cost of goods sold for the merchandise, location, and source time period selected when setting up clustering parameters.
Gross Margin Percent	The retail sales minus the cost of goods sold divided by the retail sales for the merchandise, location, and source time period selected when setting up clustering parameters.
Location Attribute	The retailer-configured location attributes.
Customer Profile	The retailer-configured customer profiles.
Product Attribute	The retailer-configured product attributes.

#### Table 4-10 Product Performance

### **Contextual Area**

This area provides a graphical illustration of the detailed data distribution about the cluster.

### Analyze Stores

In Explore Data, the BI displays the data distribution of the location by each participating attribute as well as other configured informational attributes. Advanced Clustering identifies the bins based on the underlying data and displays the histograms. It provides the percentage of stores that are present in a location. For example, a company may have 45 percent of stores in cold regions.

xplore Data							Analyze Stores		
> Summary					ggle Between R Attributes And R		Deta Distribution     Select Attribute     ST - Climate		
Filters					Distribution of	Stores	50.00%		
STORES Athibute	Sales Unit	Sales AUR	Sales Retail (\$)	Gross Margin R (\$)	Gross Margin %	ST - Backroom Space			
141 - 1100 Colorado Springs	478,159	9.50	\$4,544,546.85	\$1,788,844.57	39.4%	Modera	40.00%		
153 - 1165 Flagstaff	444,350	9.50	\$4,223,215,26	\$1,662,360,61	39.4%	Modera	F 30.00%		
123 - 1185 Greensboro	501,855	9.63	\$4,833,149.07	\$1,941,718.78	40.2%	Modera			
17 - 1064 Des Moines	610,036	11.35	\$6,933,646.09	\$3,018,652.03	43.5%	Larg	20.00%		
14 - 1061 Aurora	878,312	11.35	\$9,969,960 82	\$4,340,548.08	43.5%	Modera			
83 - 1050 Rapid City	2,017,241	9.57	\$19,298,667.77	\$7,674,838.78	39.8%	Modera	30.00%		
110 - 1118 New Orleans	671,969	11.32	\$7,604,856.38	\$3,009,849.51	40.6%	Se	0.00%	100 M	
48 - 1175 Davenport	1,138,309	9.42	\$10,717,984.36	\$4,157,435.01	38.8%	Modera			
37 - 1084 Norflok	2,692,523	9.61	\$25,862,874.00	\$10,348,305,28	40.0%	Modera		ST - Climate	
99 - 1107 Jacksonville	1,528,415	11.10	\$16,943,734.62	\$7,282,940.77	43.0%	Modera	Cold	Plat Warm	
60 - 1027 Denver	1,600,997	11.21	\$17,951,157.01	\$7,760,991.20	43.2%	Sm	al Warm	Strong	
8 - 1055 Maskato	1,978,108	11.04	\$21,847,595.34	\$9,363,372.76	42.9%	Modera	te Cold	Wesk	
51 - 1187 Watertown	526,458	9.50	\$5,003,591,99	\$1,969,535.94	39.4%	Modera	te Cold	Moderate	
62 - 1029 Eugene	1,606,753	11.10	\$17,635,510.12	\$7,666,253.44	43.0%	Modera	te Warm	Woderate	
104 - 1112 Myrtle Beach	372,594	11.35	\$4,229,677.33	\$1,841,443.81	43.5%	Modera	te Hot	Weak	
54 - 1190 Harrisburg	490,709	9.42	\$4,620,641.95	\$1,792,316.33	38.8%	Modera	te Warm	Moderate	
6 - 1007 Minneapolis	2,002,359	11.16	\$22,338,343.33	\$9,629,727.39	43.1%	Sm	al Cold	Strong	
80 - 1047 Grand Forks	2,747,472	9.61	\$26,390,483.67	\$10,559,495.18	40.0%	Modera	te Cold	Moderate	
7 - 1054 Duluth	2,133,717	11.35	\$24,219,941.76	\$10,544,453.30	43.5%	Modera	te Cold	Weak	

Figure 4-12 Clustering Analyze Stores



### Category Variability

By analyzing store variability, you can determine if it is worth creating store clusters for the selected categories in the selected location. Three sections are displayed.

A grid is displayed for the selected categories and the sales contribution for a selected location.

Property	Description
Categories	A list of the selected categories that are used for store variability analysis.
Variability	The relative standard deviation of the stores in the category. A larger value for the standard deviation indicates greater store variability for the category. Such a category is a possible candidate for store clustering.
Index to average	For a selected location, an indication of how the store performs compared to the all store base. A value close to 1 indicates that the selected location is similar to the all store base. If the value is lower or higher, it indicates that the sales averages for the stores in the selected location are different from the all store base and that you should consider creating store clusters for the selected location.
Average store retail	Average store retail \$ for the category for the selected location.
Average store unit	Average store units for the category for the selected location.
Positive/negative index to average	The difference in value for the index to average for the all store base to selected location. For example, a value of 1-index to average $< 1$ or a value of index to average $-1 > 1$ .

Table 4-11 Category Variability

A graph is displayed for the index to average. This shows how the selected location performs compared to the all store base if the average sales metric is below, above, or the same when compared to the all store base average. A red color indicates a value below the all store base average. A blue color indicates a value above the all store base average.

A graph for standard deviation is displayed. This shows the standard deviation for the selected category. If the store value is greater than two standard deviations, then store clustering should be considered for the selected merchandise because the stores sales variability is sufficient.

> Summary											
					it sales co	ation to compare ntribution with All tore base	View -	rthwest Region			
Filters					<u> </u>		Selected	Variability (Sales	Index To		Avg. Store
				-			Merchandise	Retail) %	Average	5	tetail
a service and a service of the service of	Sales Unit	Sales AUR	Sales Retail (\$)	Gross Man		chandise to find			5%	89.0	60
141 - 1100 Colorado Springs	478,159	9.50				bility within the	Coffee		62%	1.01	290.5
153 - 1165 Flagstaff	444,350	9.50		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		ted location		101			
123 - 1185 Greensboro	501,855	9.63	\$4,833,149.07	1	\$1,941,718.78	40.2%		1			
17 - 1064 Des Moines	610,836	11.35	\$6,933,646.09		\$3,018,652.03	43.5%					
14 - 1061 Aurora	878,312	11.35	\$9,969,960.82		\$4,340,548.08	43.5%	0.015		100000		
83 - 1050 Rapid City	2,017,241	9.57	\$19,298,667.77	-	\$7.674.836.78	19.8%	- 0.010				Pós.
110 - 1118 New Orleans	671,969	11.32	\$7,604,856.3	Determ	ine whether	or not it is worth	0.005				Pos. Index To Avg. Neg. Index To
48 - 1175 Davesport	1,138,309	9.42	\$10,717,984.3	creating	store cluste	rs for a particular			-		Avg.
37 - 1084 Norflok	2,692,523	9,61	\$25,862,674.0	location	hierarchy le	evel or should use	-0.005				Index.
99 - 1107 Jacksonville	1,526,415	11.10	\$16,943,734.6	clu	usters for All	Store Base.	-0.010				Avg.
60 - 1027 Denver	1,600,997	11.21	\$17,951,157.01	-	57,760,991,20	432%	-0.015				
8 - 1055 Mankato	1,978,108	11.04	\$21,847,595.34	5	\$9,363,372.76	42.9%	-0.020	Batteries	Coffee		
51 - 1187 Watertown	526,458	9.50	\$5,003,591,99	5	\$1,969,535.94	39.4%	50 /				
62 - 1029 Eugene	1,606,753	11.10	\$17,835,510.12		1.000 303.00	13.08			1		
104 - 1112 Myrtle Beach	372,594	11.35	\$4,229,677.33			ether or not it is	40			<-3 b/t→	-3 and -2
54 - 1190 Harrisburg	490,709	9.42	\$4,620,641.98	wo	orth creating	store clusters for	- 30				2 and -1 1 and 0
6 - 1007 Minneapolis	2.002,359	11.16	\$22,338,343,33	a	particular p	roduct category	20			b/t 0	and 1 and 2
80 - 1047 Grand Forks	2,747,472	9.61	\$26,390,483.67	-	using deviation	on from average				b/t 2	2 and 3
7 - 1054 Duluth	2 133 717	11.35	\$24,219,941,76	51	10.544.453.30	43.5%	10		1.1	<b>2</b> > 3	

### Figure 4-13 Category Variability

### Attribute Group Variability

This is used to analyze the most significant attributes (product or location) for a specific merchandise in a selected location.

The attribute group variability section shows attribute graphs for location and product, indicating the key attributes that are driving sales performance.

The attribute variability section, for each attribute group, shows the sales variability for each attribute value in the selected stores. It calculates the index for the attribute group, indicating attribute significance.

kplore Data						Attribute Group Variability	
> Summary			-				
👸 Export -				Select Merchand Location to find in		Merchandise 10000 - Coffee  Location 2 - Northwest Region	3 69
Filters			0	ocation and product	tattributes	Store Attribute Variability	Product Attribute Variability
STORES Abribule	Sales Unit	Sales AUR	Sales Retail (\$)	Gross Margin R (\$)	Gross Margin % S	17-1 0.6	0.08
141 - 1100 Colorado Springs	478,159	9.50	\$4,544,54	6.05 \$1,788,044.5	39.4%	0.4	0.06
153 - 1165 Flagstaff	444,350	9.50	54.2	and the second second	$\sim$	0.2	0.02
123 - 1185 Greensboro	501,055	9.63	\$4.5 V	liew meaningful pro			0.00
17 - 1064 Des Moines	610,836	11.35	\$6.5	attributes to lever	-		Segneri Roast SubSegner FormalStre FormalStre Brand Brand Brand TradeType Private Lab
14 - 1061 Aurora	878,312	11.35	\$9.5	clustering pr	ocess	Servici Primar Store S Store S Store S Multi-L Divert Encome Comp Comp Comp Comp Comp Comp Comp Comp	eepwerd boad addSegmert addCateoper taruf actur, kand kand kand kand kand kand kand kand
83 - 1050 Rapid City	2,017,241	9.57	\$19,296,66	7.77 \$7,874,838.7	39.8%	10000000000000	and units of the
110 - 1118 New Orleans	671,969	11.32	\$7,604,85	6.36 \$3,089,849.5	40.6%		
48 - 1175 Davenport	1,138,309	9.42	\$10,717,98	4.36 \$4,157,435.0	38.8%	Variability Standard Deviation	
37 - 1984 Norflok	2,692,523	9.61	\$25,862,67	4.00 \$10,348,305.2	40.0%	Attribute ST - Historic Landmark	Attribute Private Label
99 - 1107 Jacksonville	1,526,415	11.10	\$16,943,73	4.62 \$7,282,940.7	43.0%	Group	Group
60 - 1027 Denver	1,600,997	11.21	\$17,951,15	7.01 \$7,760,991.20	43.2%	Variability for ST + Historic	Variability for Private Label
I - 1055 Mankato	1,978,108	11.04	\$21,847			Landmark	\$180K
51 - 1187 Watertown	526,458	9.50	\$5,00	Deep dive by each		12,000K	
62 - 1029 Eugene	1,606,753	11.10	\$17,83	find significant attr	ribute values	57,000K 56,000K	37 \$120K
104 - 1112 Myrtle Beach	372,594	11.35	\$4,22	and their variation	on in stores.	G \$5,000K	550K
54 - 1190 Harrisburg	490,709	9.42	\$4,620,04	1.80 \$1,182,310.3		-9 \$4,000K 33,000K	- sox ballan ballan
5 - 1007 Minneapolis	2,002,359	11.16	\$22,338,34	3.33 \$9,629,727.3	43.1%	P \$2,000K	Private Label - Shivate Label - Non-Pri Label -
80 - 1047 Grand Forks	2,747,472	9.61	\$26,390,48	3.67 \$10,559,495.1	40.0%	51,000	8
7 - 1054 Duluth	2,133,717	11.35	\$24,219,94	1 76 \$10 544 453 3	43.5%	No Yes	C REFAIL

Figure 4-14 Attribute Group Variability



## **Cluster Setup Stage**

You can use this stage to perform what-if analysis by defining one or more scenarios that are based on a specified number of clusters and attributes. You can select one or more attributes and assign different weights to the attributes. The attributes and weights you assign are then fed to the clustering analytics to calculate the weighted distance. Using these scenarios, you can experiment with different numbers of clusters, participating attributes, and their weights. You can either define the maximum number or the minimum number of clusters or alternatively define a specific number of clusters that you want to be generated. Once the scenarios are generated, different scenarios can be compared. You can also use other features in this stage to copy or delete scenarios.

#### Process

Here is the high-level process for setting up scenarios.

- 1. Either select the name of a scenario you want to modify or enter a name for the new cluster you want to create.
- 2. If you want the application to optimize the number of clusters, enter minimum and maximum values for the number of clusters.
- 3. If you want the application to generate a specific number of clusters, enter that value. In this case, the application generates the exact number of clusters and provides the optimal number of clusters as informational data.
- 4. Optionally, configure the weights assigned to the attributes. The total must add up to 100 percent. Use a value of 0 percent if you do not want a specific attribute to be part of the clustering process.
- 5. Click the **Execute** icon to execute the scenario. Once the processing is complete, you see the results in the Cluster Results stage.
- 6. To see a list of all scenarios and the status for each, go to the Scenario List tab.
- **7.** To compare the defining characteristics of two different scenarios, go to the Scenario Compare tab.

### Summary

This lists the criteria you initially selected to define the cluster.

### Figure 4-15 Cluster Criteria Summary

ummary Name	Coffee Holiday Season Region PE	Cluster by Product Performance	
Merchandise	Product Hierarchy	Location Location Hierarchy	
	CLS 10000 - Coffee	REGION 3 - Southeast Region, 2 - Northwe	al P
Planning Period	Christmas / New Years	Is Nested X	bin



Field	Description
Name	The name you provided for the cluster in the Cluster Criteria stage.
Cluster By	A predefined group of attributes that include Consumer Profile, Product Performance, Store Attribute, Product Attribute, and Mixed Attribute. These criteria types are sets of attributes. For example, store attributes are the properties of a store. These properties can include ethnicity, store format, and store size.
Merchandise	The merchandise level and nodes for the cluster.
Location	The location level and nodes for the cluster.
Fiscal Period	The time period for the cluster.
Is Nested	Indicates whether or not the cluster is nested within another cluster.
Merchandise Hierarchy Type	Provides details about which type of hierarchy the cluster criteria have been created for.

### Table 4-12 Cluster Criteria Summary

### Scenario Definition Section

This area has three tabs: Scenario Definition, Scenario List, and Scenario Compare.

**Scenario Definition Tab** 

cenario Definition Scenario L	ist Scenario Cor	mpare			Scenario Attributes - SIs Re	222772
+ × 🖯 🖸					Attributes	Weights (%)
Select Scenario + Name + Max # of Clusters + Min # of Clusters Exact # of Clusters Search	Sis Retail Sis Retail 100 1		Define Multiple Clusteri Which Can Be Compared Other Throughout The Clu	Against Each	Sales Retail (S) View attributes a that are selected i	
Actions - View - 🛄 🝫	* 0 00 1	Weight Status: 🛩	0	Group Name Contain		
		10000000000	and the second se			
Group		Attribute	Weight (%)	Attribute Weight Equals		
			100	Attribute Weight Equals		Search
	×	Attribute Sales Unit		Attribute Weight Equals	•	Search
	×		100	Attribute Weight Equals		Search
	×××	Sales Unit	<b>100</b> 0	Attribute Weight Equals		search
	× × ×	Sales Unit Sales AUR	<b>100</b> 0 0	Attribute Weight Equals	Search/Update the Allocated Weights On	e Attribute Values / An 'As-Needed' Basis;
Group PE	× × × ×	Sales Unit Sales AUR Sales Retail (\$)	100 0 0 100	Attribute Weight Equals	Search/Update the Allocated Weights On Accounting For The	e Attribute Values /

Figure 4-16	Clustering Scenario	Definition
-------------	---------------------	------------

The following information is needed to define a scenario.

Table 4-13 Scenario Definition

Field Name Description	
Select Scenario	Select an existing scenario if you want to modify it.
Name	A unique name that identifies the scenario being defined.



Field Name	Description
Max. # of Clusters	Set the maximum number for the total number of clusters that can be generated. The application determines the optimal number of clusters during the generation process.
Min. # of Clusters	Set the minimum number for the total number of clusters that can be generated. The application determines the optimal number of clusters during the generation process.
Exact # of Clusters	Indicates that the exact number of clusters should be generated. The application does not determine the optimal number of clusters.

#### Table 4-13 (Cont.) Scenario Definition

#### Attributes

The Attributes table is used to define which attributes are included in the cluster criteria and the weights that should be assigned to each participating attribute. You can

- search by attribute, attribute value, and attribute weight
- assign equal weight to the selected attribute
- assign weight to the selected attribute or attribute value
- reset weights to default values

The following information defines the attributes that are participating or non-participating.

Field Name	Description
Participating	A check in this column indicates that the attributes participate in the cluster criteria.
Groups	Identifies the group.
Attributes	A description of the attribute.
Weights	The weight assigned to the attribute. All participating attributes can have the same weight or each participating attribute can have a unique weight. The total of all the weights must add up to 100 percent.

#### Table 4-14 Attributes

The Attributes toolbar, shown in Figure 4-17, includes the following functionality:

Table 4-15 A	ttribute Toolbar
--------------	------------------

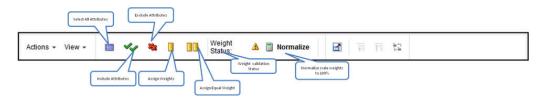
Function	Description
Action menu	Resets the weights to the default value overrides that the user provided during configuration.
Weight status	Provides the weight validation status. If the weights do not add up to 100 percent, then a warning is displayed and the scenario cannot be executed.
Include or exclude attributes	Any attribute with a weight equal to zero is not included in the clustering process.



Function	Description
Normalize	Scaling attribute weights to ensure that weights are valid. User- provided weights are normalized by applying a weighting average that adds up to 100 percent.

### Table 4-15 (Cont.) Attribute Toolbar

### Figure 4-17 Attribute Toolbar



### **Contextual Area**

The contextual business intelligence lists a set of attributes and weights that the current scenario includes as the participating attributes for the clustering process.

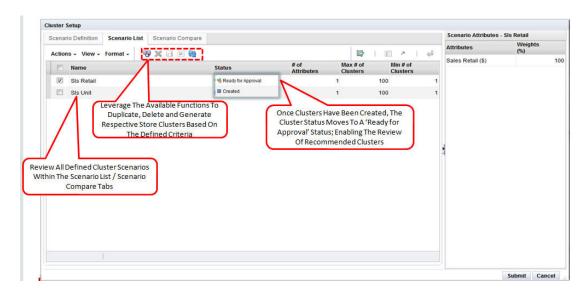
### Figure 4-18 Scenario Attributes

	liew		
Actions +	View - 📖 🛷 🎕 🖪	Weight 🛕 🗐 Normalize	21 百 百 1
	Attribute Group	Attribute Values	Weight (%)
• •	Performance		70
•	Forecast		33.33
• 🗸	Consumer Profile		33.33
* *	Customer Profile		0
* *	Location Attribute		0

### **Scenario List Tab**

The Scenario List summarizes the characteristics for each scenario.





#### Figure 4-19 Scenario List

You can make a copy of a specific scenario in order to modify it in some way, delete a specific scenario, execute a specific scenario, or save a specific scenario. You can also refresh the scenario list in order to view the updated scenario status.

Field Name	Description
Name	The unique name that identifies the scenario.
Status	Created, Ready for Approval, Completed with Errors, Approved, Rejected.
# of Attributes	The number of attributes is defined by the Cluster by option you select and the weights you optionally assign.
Max. # of Clusters	If you provided a value for this in the scenario definition, that number is displayed here.
Min. # of Clusters	If you provided a value for this in the scenario definition, that number is displayed here.

#### Table 4-16 Scenario List

#### Scenario Compare Tab

You can select two scenarios from the list to compare. The scenarios you select from the Scenario list are shown side-by-side to facilitate the comparison.



### Figure 4-20 Scenario Compare

Select Scenario Sis Unit		Select Scenario to Compare Sis Retail	
Nax # of Clusters 100 tin # of Clusters 1 Actions = View = Format = 100 > 40		Max # of Clusters 100 Min # of Clusters 1 Actions -> View -> Format -> IIII >>   ou	
Attributes	Weight (%)	Attributes	Weight (%)
PE - Sales Unit	100.0	PE - Sales Retail (\$)	100.0
PE - Sales AUR	0.0	PE - Sales Unit	0.1
PE - Sales Retail (\$)	0.0	PE - Sales AUR	0.
PE - Gross Margin R (\$)	0.0	PE - Gross Margin R (\$)	0.
PE - Gross Margin %	0.0	PE - Gross Margin %	0.4
		1	

### Cluster Results Stage

After you select a scenario and execute it, you can see the results in this stage. The application uses the data and the parameters you defined in order to group stores together that are most similar according to the characteristics you selected and to separate stores that are most dissimilar. You can also use this stage to rename a cluster.

### Process

You use this stage to review clusters, their composition, and the cluster hierarchy, using the grid view and the graph view. This includes

- Reviewing a cluster to see the goodness of fit by using the scores. Determine if any clusters are outliers that warrant further analysis.
- Rank the scenarios (cluster sets) to see how well they are separated and how compact the stores are within each cluster.
- View the optimality of the clusters recommended by the application to determine if increasing the number of clusters beyond the optimal number is significant.
- Rename the cluster after analyzing the centroids and before the cluster is approved.

### Summary

This lists the criteria you initially selected to define the cluster.





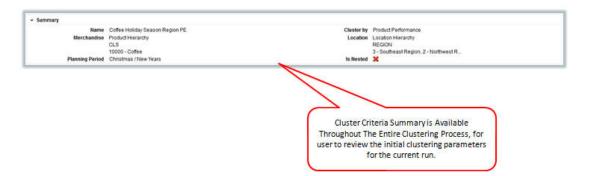


Table 4-17	Cluster	Criteria	Summarv
		••••••	<u> </u>

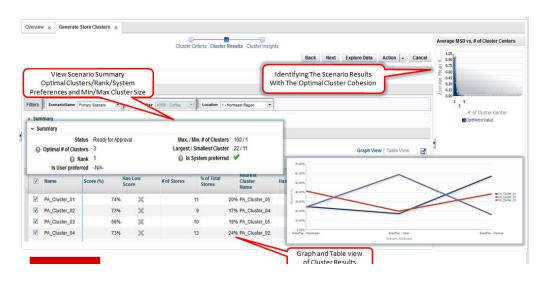
Field	Description
Name	The name you provided for the cluster in the Cluster Criteria stage.
Cluster By	A predefined group of attributes that include Consumer Profile, Product Performance, Store Attribute, Product Attribute, and Mixed Attribute. These criteria types are sets of attributes. For example, store attributes are the properties of a store. These properties can include ethnicity, store format, and store size.
Merchandise	The merchandise level and nodes for the cluster.
Location	The location level and nodes for the cluster.
Fiscal Period	The time period for the cluster.
Is Nested	Indicates whether or not the cluster is nested within another cluster.
Merchandise Hierarchy Type	Provides details about which type of hierarchy the cluster criteria have been created for.

### Scenario Results Section

The Scenario Results section displays the following:

- The Scenario Summary, which provides key cluster set attributes for the executed scenario as well as its status.
- The Scenario Results, which has three tabs: Clusters, Cluster Composition, and Cluster Hierarchy.





### Figure 4-22 Clustering Scenario Results

The Summary section provides an overview of the characteristics of the clusters.

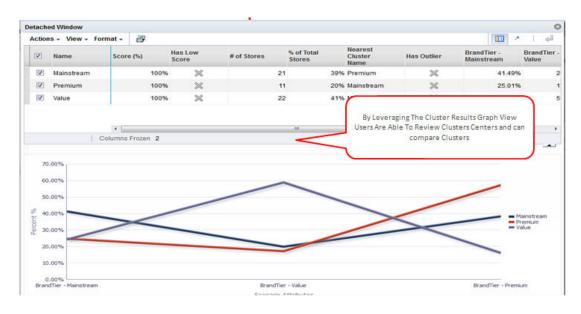
Table 4-18	Scenario Results Summary
------------	--------------------------

Field	Description
Status	Created, Ready for Approval, Completed with Errors, Approved, Rejected.
Optimal # of Clusters	The optimal number of clusters determined by the optimization.
Rank	The application compares executed scenarios and ranks them. A value of 1 indicates the best scenario.
Max./Min # of Clusters	The number you provided for the maximum and minimum number of clusters to calculated.
Largest/Smallest Cluster	Provides the sizes of the largest cluster and the smallest cluster in order to show the range of values.
Is System Preferred	Indicates whether or not the system prefers the scenario.
Is User Preferred	Indicates whether or not the user prefers the scenario.

The Clusters section provides the cluster results for each individual cluster in the scenario in either a Graph View or a Table View. The attributes displayed depend on the Cluster by option chosen in the Cluster Criteria stage.

The Graph View shows the percentage for each attribute in the cluster.





#### Figure 4-23 Cluster Results Graph View

The Table View provides details that can help you analyze the cluster.

Table 4-19	Scenario Results -	<b>Clusters: Table View</b>	

Field	Description
Name	The name you assigned to the cluster.
# of Stores	The number of stores in the cluster.
% of Total Stores	The percentage of the total stores that the number of stores represents.
Nearest Cluster Name	The name of the cluster that is most similar to this cluster.
Score %	This value is calculated at the level of store and then averaged to the cluster. The probability, expressed as a percentage, of a store being present in this cluster rather than any of the other clusters.
Has Outlier	Indicates a cluster with the number of stores below a threshold. For example, the number of stores are below certain percentage of the number of stores in a cluster.
Has Low Score	The score threshold can be defined in two ways. The default threshold is calculated as a probability that a store exists in any one of the clusters. The user can further override this threshold at the time of deployment by each Cluster by.
Attributes and their %	For each attribute specific to the Cluster by option, the value indicates the percentage that attribute represents within the total cluster.

The Clusters Composition sub-tab breaks down the cluster into its component parts and shows the percentages for each attribute.

The Table View, shown in Figure 4-24, shows attributes and the score percent.



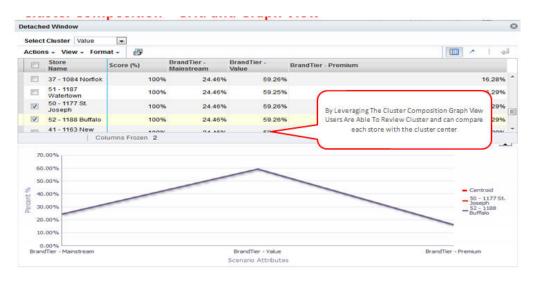


Figure 4-24 Cluster Composition Table View

The Graph View shows the centroid of a cluster and allows the user to compare each store with the cluster centroid.

#### **Cluster Hierarchy**

The cluster hierarchy shows the parent-to-child cluster relationship with the cluster centers. Any additional store attributes are rolled up as averages or modes for each cluster level. You can view the cluster hierarchy for each scenario.

The cluster hierarchy is displayed for each scenario. In the case of nested hierarchies, the cluster hierarchy is displayed in tree format. You can select the attributes to view and export the selected attributes with a cluster hierarchy tree in Excel format.

Expor			erarchy Gird View Users Are es at each hierarchy and ca		V			
Filters	Centers		for additional attributes at export Cluster Hierarchy to export		el.			
Level 1	Level 2	7 /		Score (%)	Sales Unit	Sales AUR	Sales Retail (\$)	Gross Margin R (
> A <	/			74%	2,415,842	10.46	\$25,220,467.24	\$10,35
> B	11			76%	1,767,319	10.34	\$18,729,630.24	\$7,75
vc .	$\nu$			75%	1,027,511	10.81	\$10,987,609.07	\$4,51
	V Cold			100%	1,016,693	10.58	\$10,600,537.01	\$4,35
		> Mainstream		73%	894,454	11.25	\$10,046,448.18	\$4,34
		> Premium		100%	768,955	11.32	\$8,702,464.50	\$3,53
		V Value		73%	1,237,375	9.50	\$11,755,875.87	\$4,62
			87 - 1149 Cheyenne	68%	1,271,998	9.62	\$12,234,404.05	\$4,90
			46 - 1172 Allegany	68%	1,188,901	9.42	\$11,194,339.22	\$4,34
			86 - 1053 Scottsbluff	80%	1,264,788	9.42	\$11,908,871.51	\$4,61
			47 - 1174 Dubuque	69%	1,322,878	9.62	\$12,723,780.21	\$5,10
			48 - 1175 Davenport	78%	1,138,309	9.42	\$10,717,984.36	\$4,15
				• ( <u></u> )				•
								OK

Figure 4-25 Cluster Hierarchy Grid View



## Export to Excel

You can select attributes to view data in Pivot and Excel to Export. On selecting icon export to excel user can open or save excel sheet. See excel format below to review cluster hierarchy and their aggregate.

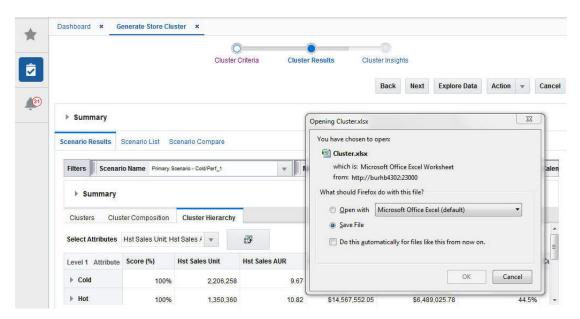


Figure 4-26 Save as Excel File

The Excel-generated file can be then used by external visualization tools to generate graphs not supported in the application.

#### Figure 4-27 Excel File

	А	В	C	D	E	F	G	Н	11/	J
1	LEVEL1	LEVEL2	LEVEL3	Store Name	Score (%)	Hst Sales Uni∯	Ist Sales AUR	<b>Hst Sales Retail</b>	Ist Gross Margin	st Gross Margir
2	Cold				100%	2,206,258	9.67	\$20,994,088.41	\$8,488,147.56	40.6%
3	Cold	Cold/Perf_3			81%	571,643	10.13	\$5,781,374.03	\$2,490,862.27	42.8%
4	Cold	Cold/Perf_4	CP_Cluster_01		100%	571,643	10.13	\$5,781,374.03	\$2,490,862.27	42.8%
5	Cold	Cold/Perf_5	CP_Cluster_02	68 - 1035 Spokane	100%	299,051	11.01	\$3,293,860.63	\$1,555,842.29	47.2%
6	Cold	Cold/Perf_6	CP_Cluster_03	22 - 1069 Detroit	100%	323,853	11.07	\$3,583,657.79	\$1,692,901.38	47.2%
7	Cold	Cold/Perf_7	CP_Cluster_04	51 - 1187 Watertown	100%	606,559	8.71	\$5,285,405.82	\$2,002,515.98	37.9%
8	Cold	Cold/Perf_8	CP_Cluster_05	76 - 1043 Casper	100%	342,003	10.19	\$3,484,737.64	\$1,361,867.45	39.1%
9	Cold	Cold/Perf_9	CP_Cluster_06	89 - 1151 Vail	100%	592,923	8.83	\$5,237,635.10	\$2,019,730.73	38.6%
10	Cold	Cold/Perf_10	CP_Cluster_07	66 - 1033 Great Falls	100%	813,199	10.89	\$8,854,491.61	\$4,056,034.53	45.8%
11	Cold	Cold/Perf_11	CP_Cluster_08	18 - 1065 Omaha	100%	589,169	11.31	\$6,661,449.26	\$3,174,290.53	47.7%
12	Cold	Cold/Perf_12	CP_Cluster_09	21 - 1068 Lansing	100%	305,039	10.98	\$3,348,926.53	\$1,587,049.30	47.4%
13	Cold	Cold/Perf_13	CP_Cluster_10	20 - 1067 South Bend	100%	275,063	10.96	\$3,014,701.44	\$1,419,485.37	47.1%
14	Cold	Cold/Perf_14	CP_Cluster_11	16 - 1063 Cedar Rapids	100%	709,508	11.33	\$8,035,512.33	\$3,837,476.49	47.8%
15	Cold	Cold/Perf_15	CP_Cluster_12	91 - 1197 Pierre	100%	607,093	8.75	\$5,313,445.67	\$2,025,722.48	38.1%
16	Cold	Cold/Perf_16	CP_Cluster_13	14 - 1061 Aurora	100%	701,834	11.32	\$7,943,662.79	\$3,796,386.44	47.8%
17	Cold	Cold/Perf_17	CP_Cluster_14	52 - 1188 Buffalo	100%	572,589	8.76	\$5,015,910.56	\$1,906,445.48	38.0%
18	Cold	Cold/Perf 18	CP Cluster 15	17 - 1064 Des Moines	100%	496,015	11.22	\$5,563,602.56	\$2,652,263.81	47.7%



## Scenario List

The Scenario List section contains one table with details about each cluster. Here, you can approve or reject a cluster.

After a cluster is approved, it is available for other applications.



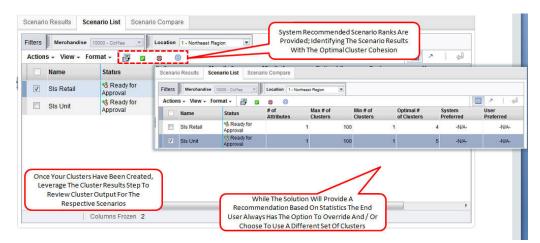


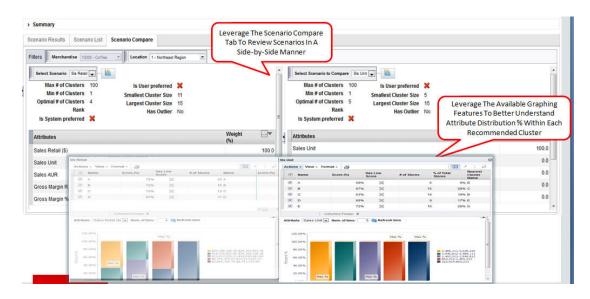
Table 4-20Scenario List

Field	Description
Name	Name assigned to the scenario.
Status	Created, Ready for Approval, Completed with Errors, Approved, Rejected.
Parent Cluster Level #	The parent cluster name to which the scenario results apply if nested cluster criteria is selected.
# of Attributes	The total number of attributes used, as determined by the weight assigned to each attribute.
Max. # of Clusters	The value used for the maximum in the scenario execution, if this option used.
Min. # of Clusters	The value used for the minimum in the scenario execution, if this option used.
Optimal # of Clusters	The value used for the optimal number of clusters in the scenario execution, if this option used.
System Preferred	Indicates whether the scenario is the one the application prefers.
User Preferred	Indicates whether the scenario is one the user prefers.
Rank Sequence	Indicates the ranking the scenario is given by the application.

## Scenario Compare

The Scenario Compare section shows two clusters of your choosing side by side so that you can compare the main results of each, using the same characteristics used in Scenario Results and Scenario List.





#### Figure 4-29 Compare Scenarios

The information displayed includes:

#### Table 4-21 Scenario Compare

Field Name	Description
Max. # of Clusters	The value used for the maximum in the scenario execution, if this option used.
Min. # of Clusters	The value used for the minimum in the scenario execution, if this option used.
Optimal # of Clusters	The value used for the optimal number of clusters in the scenario execution, if this option used.
Rank	The value for the rank.
Is System Preferred	Indicates whether the scenario is the one the application prefers.
Is User Preferred	Indicates whether the scenario is the one the user prefers.
Smallest Cluster Size	The size of the smallest cluster.
Largest Cluster Size	The size of the largest cluster.
Has Outlier	Indicates a cluster with the number of stores below a threshold. For example, the number of stores are below certain percentage of the number of stores in a cluster.
Attributes	A list of relevant attributes.

## Scenario System Recommendations

The application provides the following recommendations at the scenario (cluster set), cluster, and store levels.



Sumr	mary						tem Recom	mendation for	reach	100				-
cenari	io Resul	ts Scena	ario List	Scenario	C 1.	Sec. 2010				Av	erage MSD	vs. # of Cluster Cer	ters	
ilters	Scen	arioName s	ils Unit 💌	Merch				cator to show	Low	S.	1.0			
Sum	nmary				4.	Scores Has Out	liers			Mean	0.8			
6 0	Optimal	Statu # of Cluster	is Beady	for Approv	ral				max. / Mir Largest / Sr	n.#of a				
<b>U</b>										2 C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C	0.2			
		😡 Ran							O Is Sys	stem p 🔫	0.0		aaaaaaaaaaa	and a
L		ser preferre	d -N/A-						😡 Is Sy:	stem p 🔜	0.0 1 7 4			7772
luste			d -N/A-	Cluster H	lierarchy				€ Is Sy	stem p 🤜	1 7	# of Cluster	Center	
	ers C	ser preferre	d -N/A-		lierarchy				€ Is Sy	stem p 🤜	1 7	# of Cluster Graph View		
	ers C	ser preferre	d -N/A-	<b>.</b>			rof Stores	% of Total Stores	Nearest Cluster Name	L	1 7			
Clus	ers C sters	ser preferre	od -N/A- position Score	<b>.</b>	Has Low Score				Nearest Cluster	L	0.0 1 7 4	Graph View		-
	ers C sters Name	ser preferre	od -N/A- position Score	<b>*</b> ~	Has Low Score	1		Stores	Nearest Cluster Name	L	0.0 1 7 4	Graph View	Table View	• 5 E

#### Figure 4-30 Scenario Recommendations

## Scenario Optimality

This graph indicates how the system identifies the best number of clusters for a given data set. It starts with a small number of cluster centers and searches for the number beyond which there is little improvement in the mean squared distance (MSD). At this point, increasing the number of cluster centers any more only decreases the MSD by a small amount, and the marginal improvement is small.

### Scenario Rank

You can see the ranking of all scenarios in the Cluster Results step. The scenario with the highest rank is designated as System Preferred. The ranking is based on the following:

- How many similar stores are contained in the cluster.
- How well separated the clusters are from each other.

## **Outlier Indicator**

This provides an outlier indicator in the cluster list if the cluster has an outlier store. Two outlier rules are supported. The distance from the centroid indicates that if a store is beyond a certain limit for the configuration threshold from the centroid, then the cluster to which the store belongs is marked as an outlier. When the size of a cluster is compared with the total stores, if the number of stores in the cluster is below a certain configured percentage of the total stores, then the cluster is marked as an outlier.

### **Cluster Scores**

The application provides scores for clusters, based on the calculated threshold score. The score is based on the assumption that each store has an equal chance of being a member of the cluster. A high score indicates that the store is close to the centroid. A low score indicates that the store is an outlier.



## New Stores and Stores with a Poor History

Advanced Clustering supports post-processing rules in order to allocate stores that are new or that have a poor history. These rules can be configured for each criterion and can be changed during deployment.

- Like Stores. This rule allocates new stores or stores with a poor history to the same clusters that the like location belongs to. It requires data to be provided to Advanced Clustering that defines the mapping between the location and like locations. This mapping can be configured by merchandise, and one location can be mapped to multiple locations with different weights. For example, a like location can be used to correct a store with poor history or to allocate a new store to a valid performance cluster.
- Largest Clusters. This rule allocates new stores or stores with a poor history to the largest cluster identified by Advanced Clustering. Stores can be allocated to a bigger group of stores. For example, a store that has not yet formed a customer base can be allocated to the largest cluster.
- Cohesive Clusters. This rule allocates new stores or stores with a poor history to the most compact cluster identified by Advanced Clustering. Stores can be allocated to a compact group of stores. For example, stores can be assigned to a cluster that has not been affected because of outliers.

## **Insights Stage**

Use the Insights stage to analyze a scenario, its clusters, and its hierarchy, based on performance and attribute contributions, prior to the approval of the scenario. This stage includes the following tasks:

- Approve a cluster scenario
- Create a new cluster within a scenario
- Rename clusters within a scenario
- Rank scenarios, if not completed earlier
- Flag a cluster scenario as "system preferred"
- Review a cluster hierarchy in a nested cluster

Select from the following views in this stage:

- Criteria view. Displays the parent cluster, if it exists, or the scenario for root-level clusters.
- Parent cluster. Displays any child clusters.
- Cluster. Displays the stores under the selected cluster.

Each cluster is identified by the following information:

Table 4-22	Insights	Stage
------------	----------	-------

Field Name	Description
Name	The name assigned to the cluster.
Nearest Cluster Name	The name of the cluster that is most similar to the named cluster.
# of Stores	The number of stores in the cluster.



Field Name	Description
Is Outlier	Whether or not the cluster is considered an outlier. If it is an outlier, you may want to review that store.
All Sales Metric	Financial information about the store.
Score %	This value is calculated at the level of store and then averaged to the cluster. The probability, expressed as a percent, of a store being present in this cluster rather than any of the other clusters.
Has Low Store	Indicates a cluster that falls below a defined threshold.
% Total Stores	The percentage of the total stores that the number of stores represents.
Sales Retail	The sales revenue for the cluster or store. The merchandise and the source time period are selected when the cluster parameters are set up.
Sales Unit	The sales units for the cluster or store. The merchandise and the source time period are selected when the cluster parameters are set up.
Sales Average Unit Retail	The average unit retail sales for the cluster or store. The merchandise and the source time period are selected when the cluster parameters are set up.
Gross Margin Retail	The retail sales minus the cost of goods sold for the cluster or store. The merchandise and the source time period are selected when the cluster parameters are set up.
Gross Margin Percent	The retail sales minus the cost of goods sold divided by the retail sales for the cluster or store. The merchandise and the source time period are selected when the cluster parameters are set up.
Cluster Centers	Additional attributes for each cluster.

Table 4-22 (C	Cont.) Insig	hts Stage
---------------	--------------	-----------

You use this stage to view all scenarios, examine and compare sales metrics for the various clusters, and manage clusters by approving, rejecting, merging, or deleting clusters.

Figure 4-31	Clustering I	nsights
-------------	--------------	---------

Summary										Back	Explore Data	Act	tion   -	- Can
ilters Merchandise 10000 - Coffee 3	Location 1 - Northeast F	legion 💌												
Actions 🗸 View 🖌 🖷 🏗 😫	Actions - View -	Format +	B											×
Cre	rove ate New Cluster	Score (%)		Has Low Score	# of Stores		6 of Total Stores	Nearest Cluster Name	Has Outlier	Sales Unit	Sales AUR		Sales Retail (	5)
C D Use	k Scenario r Preferred Scenario w Cluster Hierarchy		87%	×		11		20% C	×	476,17	TH	0.19	\$4,1	813,465.
✓ ✓ SIs Unit	С		70%	×		13		24% D		'Actions' Menu Cluster Scenario		0.87	\$10,3	289,289.
A	A		72%	×		15		28% B		ew Cluster (w/i		0.67	\$25,	118,746
c	В		72%	×		15		28% A	<b>Given</b> Scer			0.43	\$19,	237,446
Leverage The Available Cluster Insights Step To Better Understand Cluster									Been Com Identify A ( 'User Prefe	Cluster Scenario	As			



## Summary

This lists the criteria you initially selected to define the cluster.



#### Figure 4-32 Cluster Criteria Summary

Table 4-23	Cluster	Criteria	Summary
------------	---------	----------	---------

Field	Description
Name	The name you provided for the cluster in the Cluster Criteria stage.
Cluster By	A predefined group of attributes that include Consumer Profile, Product Performance, Store Attribute, Product Attribute, and Mixed Attribute. These criteria types are sets of attributes. For example, store attributes are the properties of a store. These properties can include ethnicity, store format, and store size.
Merchandise	The merchandise level and nodes for the cluster.
Location	The location level and nodes for the cluster.
Fiscal Period	The time period for the cluster.
Is Nested	Indicates whether or not the cluster is nested within another cluster.
Merchandise Hierarchy Type	Provides details about which type of hierarchy the cluster criteria have been created for.

## **Contextual Information**

The graphs displayed in the Clustering Insights stage are also displayed in the Manage Store Clusters tab. For a discussion, see Contextual Information.

## Manage Store Clusters Tab

You can use the Manage Store Clusters tab to view a list of the already executed cluster criteria and associated summary details. You can create manual clusters in a scenario, rank/ approve/reject scenario, mark a scenario as user preferred, rename clusters, and override any cluster composition within a scenario.



ilters Cluster by Store Attributes 💌	Merchandise 10000 - 1	Men's Knit Tops		Location 1-S	ipaces Retailer	Calendar 2015		Sales	Retail \$ vs. Sale:	s Units
Actions - View - 🐺 🎁 😫	Actions - View	- Format -	13				- <b>e</b> l	- Gro		vs. Sales Retail (\$) vs. Sale
Climate     Mens Tops_Holiday_Climate     V Climate	Name	# of Stores	% 0	f Total res	Has Outlier	Score (%)	Has Lov Score		Cluste \$500,000.00 \$450,000.00	er Sales Metric
Mens Tops_Holiday_Lifestyle     Mens Tops_Holiday_Store Size     Mens Tops_Holiday_Store Size     Nested of SL_PERF     Nested of SL_PERFORMANCE	Warm		61	46%	×	100%		(\$)	\$400,000.00	
	Cold		45	34%	×	100%			\$300,000.00	
	Hot		28	21%	×	100%		Gross Margin R	\$250,000.00	
> Nested of SL_SLOW_TEST > Nested of SL_SMK_01 > Store Size	5							Gro	\$150,000.00 \$100,000.00 \$50,000.00 \$0.00 0	1,000 2,000 3,000 Sales Retal (\$) ●Cold @Hot

Figure 4-33 Clustering Manage Cluster Criteria

The following information is displayed.

Table 4-24	Manage Store	Clusters
------------	--------------	----------

Field	Description
Is Nested	Indicates whether or not the cluster is nested within another cluster.
Is Deployed	Indicates that the cluster has been deployed.
Is Shared	A check mark indicates that more than one merchandise or location node is used in the cluster.
Scenario Created	The number of scenarios that were created.
Scenario Executed	The number of scenarios that were executed.
Name	The name of the scenario.
Status	Created, Ready for Approval, Completed with Errors, Approved, Rejected.
# Attributes	The total number of attributes used, as determined by the weight assigned to each attribute.
Max # Clusters	The value used for the maximum number of cluster centers in the scenario execution, if this option used.
Min # Clusters	The value used for the minimum number of cluster centers in the scenario execution, if this option used.
Optimal # Clusters	The value used for the optimal number of clusters in the scenario execution, if this option used.
System Preferred	Indicates whether the scenario is the one the application prefers.
Rank Sequence	Indicates the ranking the scenario is given by the application.

## **Contextual Information**

The following charts are available.



#### Attribute Value Dist By Cluster

The chart shows a comparison of sales with the average value distribution by clusters. The y axis is sales retail and the x axis is sales units. The z bubble size shows the average value for the selected attribute for the cluster.

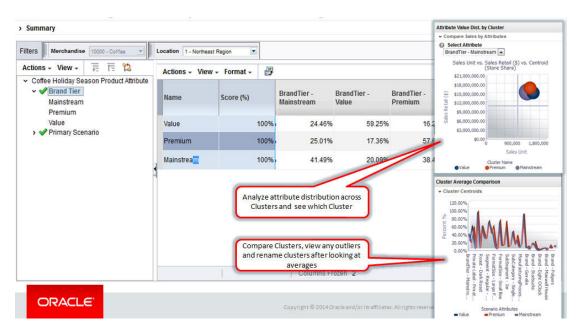
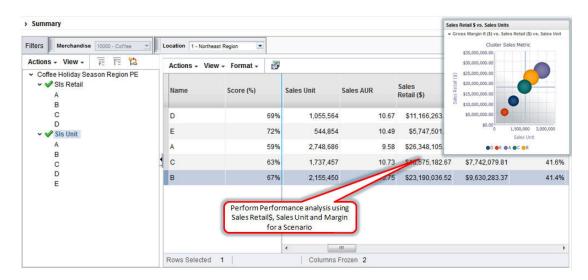


Figure 4-34 Attribute Value Dist. by Cluster

#### Sales Retail vs. Sales Units

The chart shows a comparison of sales retail and sales unit. The *y* axis is sales retail and the *x* axis is sales unit. The *z* bubble size shows the gross margin retail for a cluster.







#### **Cluster Average Comparison**

The chart overlays the centroid of the cluster and provides a comparison of cluster averages so that you can rename the clusters based on the information in the graph.

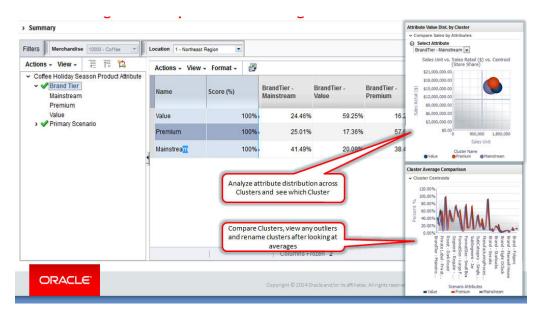


Figure 4-36 Cluster Average Comparison

#### **Cluster Comparison**

The chart shows the stacked contribution of each attribute by percentage for each cluster. You can use this chart to determine which cluster contributes the most for an attribute by viewing the clusters side by side.

#### Figure 4-37 Cluster Comparison

Generate Store Clusters ×		Cluster	r Crite	Cluster Result	Cluster Insight	3	Back Next	Cluster Composition
ilters Merchandise 10000-Cottes •	Location 1 - Spaces Ret Actions - View -		8					2 40% 20% 0% (5_Outer_0) (5_Outer_0)
<ul> <li>Coffee Holiday Season CP</li> <li>Primary Scenario</li> <li>CS_Cluster_01</li> <li>CS_Cluster_02</li> </ul>	Name Score (%)		Shoppers L			CS - Simply Seniors	CS - Soccer Moms	CS_DARKE_01 Scenario Attribuites CS - Gournet Shopers CS - Uvin Large CS - Samply Seniors CS - Soccer Moms CS - Value Seekers
CS_Cluster_03	CS_Cluster_03	No. of Concession, Name	73%				10%	Cluster Average Comparison
	CS_Cluster_01 CS_Cluster_02		71%	1993			10% 23%	+ Cluster Centroids
				*				N HARD



## Scenario Compare

Multiple scenarios are compared using optimality and scenario rank. This chart is displayed when multiple scenarios for the criteria are available. The following properties are used by the chart: minimum number of clusters, maximum number of clusters, optimal number of clusters, and the rank of the scenarios, from top to bottom.

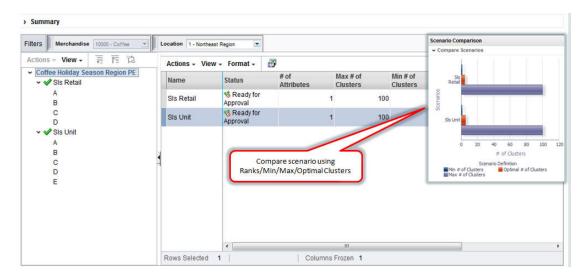


Figure 4-38 Scenario Compare

## Attribute Analysis

Stores and product attributes are analyzed and compared to identify the most prominent selling attributes within a cluster. This indicates how the store and product attributes are correlated and what each attribute in the specified cluster contributes to sales. You can make inferences about which attributes in the cluster contribute to significant sales and the potential attributes that should be considered for assortment planning in order to improve sales even more. With both store and product attribute graphs, you can see which location attributes drive the product attribute sales.



Actions - View - 7 12	Location 1 - Northeast F			tion attributes for a ster using KPIs	Store attribute analysis for Premium
<ul> <li>Coffee Holiday Season Product Attribute</li> <li>Brand Tier Mainstream Premium</li> </ul>	Store	Score (%)	BrandTier - Mainstream	BrandTier - BrandTier - Value Premium	16.00% 0 12.00%
Value	24 - 1071 Cleveland	100%	% 25.01%	17.36% 57	
	29 - 1076 Baltimore	100%	% 25.01%	17.36% 57	
	23 - 1070 Grand Rapids	100%	% 25.01%	17.36% 57	Sales Retail Contribution
	33 - 1080 Rochester	100%	% 25.01%	17.36% 57	High OC OB A OD La     Mo OSmall OYes No Med OHe     Low 0 \$12 0 \$15 Med Low 0 4x
	28 - 1075 Newark	100%	% 25.01%	17.37% 57	● 3x/ ● 5x/ ● Livi ● Yes ● No ● Co
	26 - 1073 Columbus	100%	% 25.01%	17.36% 57	Product attribute analysis for Premium 20.0%
	32 - 1079 Syracuse	100%	% 25.01%	17.36% 57	
	31 - 1078 Washington D.C.	100%	% 25.01%	17.37% 57	3
	27 - 1074 Pittsburgh	100%	% 25.01%	17.36% 57	A 5 60.0%
	30 - 1077 Richmond	100%	% 25.01%	17.37%	20.0%
	25 - 1072 Cincinatti	100%		luct attributes for a 57 ster using KPIs	20.0%
		1	Columns Froz	ten 2	Bra      Br      Bra      B

#### Figure 4-39 Attribute Analysis

The following properties are displayed by the graph. Note that the store and product attributes are only displayed when they are configured as part of the Cluster by process.

Axis	Description
x-axis	Sales Retail \$ contribution, calculated using the sales revenue share of each attribute in the cluster with respect to the total cluster sales revenue.
y-axis	Sales Unit \$ contribution, calculated using the sales unit share of each attribute in the cluster with respect to the total cluster sales units.
z-axis	Total Sales Retail \$ of each attribute in the selected cluster, indicating, via the bubble, the magnitude of the sales contribution.

#### Table 4-25 Properties

## **Cluster Overrides**

Both Cluster Insights and Manage Store Cluster can be used to override clusters manually. The following tasks, to be completed before the approval process, are available.

## **Rename Cluster**

To complete this on a nested cluster, select the parent or child clusters in the tree. With the contextual information provided, you have the necessary details to understand the cluster across the hierarchy. This task can be performed using the Cluster Contextual menu.



	Merchandise 10000 - Coffe	E1	Spaces Retailer 📃									_
	View - 📆 🛅	Actions -	View - Format -	8							1	1
-	Holiday Season_CS Cluster Menu	Rename Cluster	Score (%)	Has Low Score	# of Stores	% of Total Stores	Nearest Cluster Name	Has Outlier	Sales Unit	Sales AUR	Sales Retail (\$)	
	Expand All Below Collapse All Below Show as Top > Warre	pand All Below 10		10	37% Hot	×	1,042,908	11.08	\$11,50	5,129		
		* Rename to	С			4	15% Cold	×	1,024,178	10.85	\$10,95	1,791
		Comments Medium Performing Stores	ming Stores		13	48% Hot	×	1,016,693	10.58	\$10,600,	0,537	
> A > B												
> D	$\langle \rangle$											
		isters from top		OK Can	cel							

#### Figure 4-40 Rename Cluster

### Create New Manual Cluster

You can create a new manual cluster, describe it, and tag the cluster as Inactive, Flagship, or Manual. This task can be performed using the Scenario Contextual menu.

#### Inactive

Inactive stores are allocated to these types of clusters. Such stores are either closed, tagged as invalid, or in construction for a specific effective period.

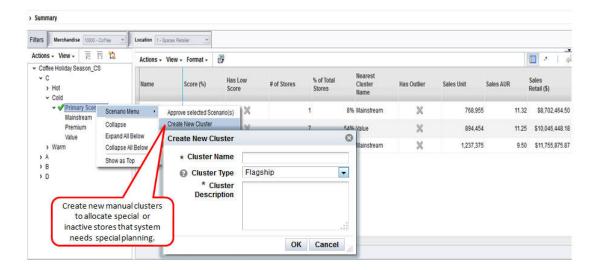
#### Flagship

Special clusters in which only certain stores reside.

#### **Manually Created**

A user manually creates an empty cluster and allocates stores to the cluster using the drag and drop feature. The application automatically re-calculates the cluster centers after the cluster composition changes.

Figure 4-41 Create Manual Cluster





## **Delete Cluster**

You can delete an empty cluster. Prior to deleting the cluster you must move the already allocated stores to another cluster. This can help you to merge clusters at the same level. The application automatically re-calculates the cluster centers after the cluster composition changes. This task can be performed using the Cluster Contextual menu.

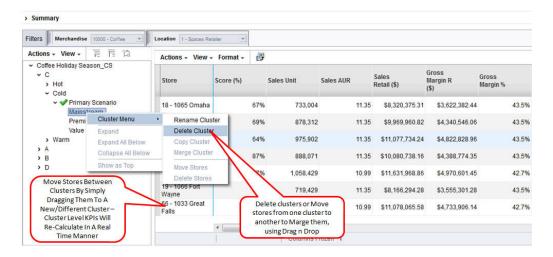


Figure 4-42 Delete Cluster

## Move Stores to Clusters

Stores can be moved from one cluster to another using drag and drop. The application automatically re-calculates the cluster centers after a cluster composition changes.

## Cluster Review, Approve, and Adjust

The approval step is the last step after the review and any manual overrides for the scenario are completed. The scenario results are a set of clusters that are effective for a merchandise, location, and calendar combination. The batch export process selects the last updated approved cluster to deploy to the subscribing applications using an interface file. You can reject an already approved cluster and deploy it if the selected scenario results are better. You are notified of any manual overrides in which approved clusters are modified. They are automatically redeployed.



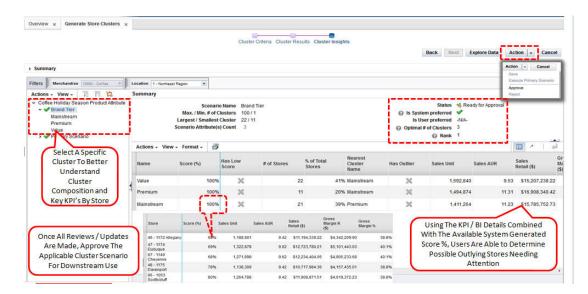


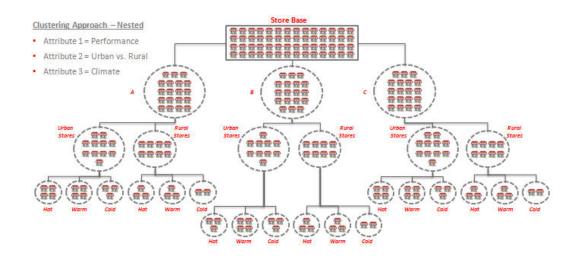
Figure 4-43 Cluster Review, Approve, and Adjust

## Nested vs. Mixed Attribute

This section describes nested attributes as compared to mixed attributes.

### Nested

By default, all Cluster by except mixed attributes can have nested hierarchies. Performance attributes can be further clustered by location attributes, which can be further clustered by location attributes. This approach facilitates dynamic hierarchies in clusters. Nesting can be configured to be enabled or disabled.



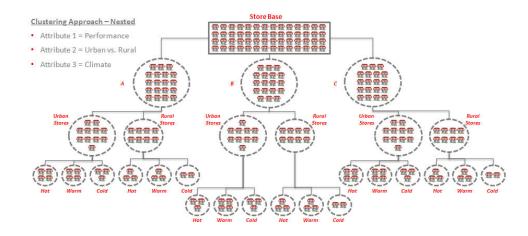
#### Figure 4-44 Nested Hierarchies

Nested clusters can be created by



- Dynamic hierarchy. Select the Cluster by for each level of a hierarchy while creating a cluster criteria.
- Templates. Select a predefined Cluster by hierarchy while creating a cluster criteria.
- Manual nesting. Create a single cluster criteria, review the results, and then determine whether or not to further cluster. The number of clusters using this approach is granular. The cluster results are hierarchical.

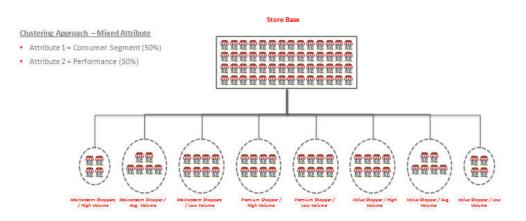
Figure 4-45 Nested Clusters



### **Mixed Attributes**

The following mixed attributes are supported by default: performance, customer segment, location attributes, and product attributes. You can combine attributes from different Cluster by. For example, you can combine attributes from customer segment and performance Cluster by and generate a cluster using sales revenue and customer segment distributions. The number of clusters that are generated using mixed attributes are usually limited, as compared to nested clusters. This approach generates flat clusters with no hierarchy, as attributes are scaled based on the weights you provide.







Cluster Criteria						<ul> <li>Cluster by - Mixed Attribute (10000 - Coffee)</li> </ul>	
Criteria						> CS	
* Name	Coffee Holiday Season	Mixed				> Roast	
Cluster by	Mixed Attribute	₩.	@ Templates	Coffee_Consumer Prof		✓ BrandTier	
Merchandise			Location	Location Hierarchy	•	Mainstream	
	CLS			COMPANY	• •	Value	
	10000 - Coffee	9 💌		1 - Spaces Retailer	e p	Premium	
Effective Period 😡						> Segment	
Fiscal Period	C Fiscal Year		Planning Period 🧕	Christmas / New Years		/ m	
	All	م +	Select Dates 📀		126	<ul> <li>Primary Scenario - Mixed Attribute (10000 - Coff</li> </ul>	lee)
Source Time Period @	9 + X				B	Name Primary Scenario Status Created Max # of Clusters 10 Min # of Clusters 1	
Period Level		Start Period	End P	eriod	Weights	Attribute Weight (%)	
Fiscal Year		2015	• 2015		(%)	Sales Retail (\$)	5
riscal rear		2015	2015		100	CS - Gourmet Shoppers	
						CS - Livin Large	
			(	<u>`</u>		CS - Livin Large CS - Simply Seniors	
				ouped Based on		CS - Simply Seniors	
			Assigned We	ouped Based on eights, Combined ite Value Details			1

Figure 4-47 Create Cluster Using Mixed Attributes

Figure 4-48 Renaming Mixed Attribute Cluster Results

ers Merchandise 1	0000 - Coffee 🔄	Location 1 - Spaces Re	tailer 💌						
ctions - View -	同時間	Actions - View	- Format -	9				2	1 4
<ul> <li>Coffee Holiday Season ME</li> <li>         Primary Scenario     </li> <li>         ME_Cluster_01         ME_Cluster_02     </li> </ul>		Store	Sales Retail (\$)	Gross Margin R (\$)	Gross Margin %	CS - Gourmet Shoppers	CS - Livin Large	CS - Simp Seniors	
ME_Cluster_03	3	94 - 1001 Atlanta	\$27,247,869.3	3 \$11,746,150.99	43.1%	7%	17%		9
ME_Cluster_04 ME_Cluster_05 ME_Cluster_06	12 - 1059 Milwaukee	\$18,669,203.2	9 \$8,071,430.84	43.2%	239	13%		13	
	60 - 1027 Denver	\$17,951,157.0	1 \$7,760,991.20	43.2%	24%	14%	5	11	
	136 - 1095 San Diego	\$19,213,311.9	0 \$8,364,754.95	43.5%	27	Leverage The Mixed At			
		135 - 1094 Tucson	\$17,592,133.8	7 \$7,605,771.37	43.2%	29	Functionality T The Numbe		e
<u> </u>		57 - 1024 Portland	\$24,547,630.0	3 \$10,582,118.01	43.1%	20	Clusters Bein While Accou	-	
Store Are Grouped Based on Assigned Weights, Combined	hts, Combined	95 - 1008 St. Louis	\$18,192,220.3	3 \$7,819,578.51	43.0%	27	Multiple Attr Consumer Se	ibutes (ie.	
With Attribute	Value Details	7 1054 Duluth	\$24 240 041 7	6 640 E44 4E2 20	40 500	200	Perform	• · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	

# 5 Customer Segmentation

This chapter describes the Customer Segmentation module.

## Introduction

Customer segmentation is an enterprise-specific solution that uses data mining to group customers based on customer attributes and customer transactions. The retailer can use this information to describe and predict customer behavior. It provides the retailer with a vehicle to target customers with offers, pricing, assortment, and experience.

Retailers understand that shoppers are heterogeneous in nature, that they possess different wants and needs, and that it is impossible to satisfy them all. Retailers can differentiate themselves from their competitors by specializing and offering goods and services that are tailored to one or more market segments.

Customer Segmentation can be used to group customers and to discover hidden customer segments based on the contents of customer shopping baskets and the number of shopping trips they make. Loyalty card data is used to determine if these customer segments differ in terms of socio-demographic or lifestyle characteristics and whether these characteristics can be used to target different customer segments with more relevant product offers.

Retailers can create localized assortments and use customer insights to determine which products to offer by location or channel. This provides insights into the importance of a product to key customer segments and helps when making drop or keep decisions about products within an assortment.

This science-driven tool helps to automate segmentation in a repeatable process and bridges the gap between targeted marketing to targeted assortments.

## Features

The key features of Customer Segmentation include:

- Scenario-based segment generation, based on customer attributes, customer behavior, and transactions.
- Attribute importance and correlation mining to identify significant attributes and their associations.
- The ability to generate granular customer segments via the UI. These customer segments include departments such as men, women, and children, health and beauty, or groceries.
- A three-step segment-generation process.
- What-if capabilities that can be used to create multiple segmentation scenarios and then measure them against one another. This can help ensure that the most appropriate segments are used by the applicable planning and execution processes.
- Automatic ranking of segment scenarios to support what-if comparisons.
- Recommendations for the optimal segment scenario and number of segments.



- Descriptions of the main characteristics of the data assigned to each segment using segment rules.
- The use of Oracle data mining hierarchical segmentation and an enhanced version of the k-means algorithm.

## **Overview of the Customer Segmentation Process**

To use Customer Segmentation, follow this general process to create segments, working in the Generate Customer Segment tab:

 Versions – Perform preprocessing actions such as filter and sample a customer's shopping-specific categories or departments. Also identify important attributes that are specific to merchandise and location for customer segmentation.

Segment Criteria – View all available segments for the specified merchandise, location, and calendar. Review the segment criteria or scenario details for each segment. Use an existing segment as the basis for creating a new segment.

- Explore Data Examine attributes and their summaries for the segment. Review multiple significant attributes and their correlations using the contextual information.
- Segment Setup Define multiple what-if scenarios. Such scenarios can be compared with one another throughout the segmentation process.
- Segment Results View the scenario results and compare scenarios.
- Segment Insights Gain an understanding about segment results and segment performance prior to approval by examining the contextual information.

## **Customer Segmentation Overview Tab**

The Customer Segmentation Overview tab displays a list of the most recently defined segment criteria and provides the status, segmentation criteria, and applicable merchandise, location, and calendar nodes. You can click on the criteria names in order to access them within the Generate Customer Segments tab.

Dashboard		View - Format -	🕲 Q 📑 🖻 🖻	ابه 1						
Dashboard Customer Segmentation		/	•							
		Name	Segment By	Created By	Last Updated By	Last Updated On	Status	Period Count	Merchandise Count	Location Count
		18 - Category Purchase	Category Purchase Behavior	segadv1	segadv1	11/4/2015	Created	1	1	
		17 - RFM and Customer Behavior	RFM and Customer Behavior	segadv1	segadv1	11/4/2015	Created	1	1	
	8	15 - Customer Demographics	Customer Demographics	segadv1	segadv1	11/4/2015	Execution in Progress	1	1	
	Ē	15 - Customer Demographics	Customer Demographics	segadv1	segadv1	11/4/2015	Execution in Progress	1	ì	

#### Figure 5-1 Customer Segmentation Overview Tab



Field	Description
Name	The criteria ID and user-assigned name of the segment.
Segment By	The Segment By option used for the segment.
Created By	The name of the user who created the segment.
Last Updated By	The name of the user who most recently updated the segment.
Last Updated On	The date when the segment criteria were most recently updated.
Status	The most recent, up-to-date status across the scenarios for the segment criteria. Value include Created, Ready for Preview, Ready for Approval, Approved, and Rejected.
Period Count	The number of calendar nodes defined for the criteria. Hover over the count in order to see a list of the calendar keys associated with the criteria.
Merchandise Count	The number of merchandise nodes defined for the criteria. Hover over the count in order to see a list of the merchandise keys associated with the criteria.
Location Count	The number of location nodes defined for the criteria. Hover over the count in order to see a list of the location keys associated with the criteria.

Table 5-1 Cluster Criteria Overview Tab

## Segmentation Criteria

The following segmentation criteria are supported by default:

#### **Customer Demographics**

This descriptive segmentation technique leverages customer loyalty programs and demographic information (such as residence, profession, age, gender, ethnicity, marital status, and education) about customers to generate demographics based on customer segments.

#### **RFM and Customer Behavior**

Segmentation based on purchase behavior aims at discovering groups of customers who exhibit similar purchasing behavior. However, the definition of behavior in this context includes many factors. For example, retailers may want to distinguish between light and heavy users, regular stock-up shoppers versus emergency top-up shoppers, lunchtime shoppers versus evening shoppers, home and daytime shoppers versus work and weekend shoppers, or fast-checkout customers versus regular checkout customers. The two important behavioral dimensions for understanding customer motivations are visit behavior (identified by the time of day and the day of week that the visits take place) and shopping behavior (identified by the customer's spend dispersion across categories purchased during the trip).

#### **Category Purchase Behavior**

Another type of behavior segmentation aims at segmenting the customers who seek similar benefits when evaluating and choosing or purchasing products. These benefits can be measures such as economical price, bulk products, durability, or free shipping. Here, the segment process considers factors that capture customer sensitivity to price and promotions for each category. This can help retailers to segment customers by distinguishing predicted customer responses to the targeted or general promotion of products.



## Version List Tab

The Version List tab is used to review, define, and execute preprocessing criteria for customer segments. Version criteria allow users to define versions for merchandise and location combinations. These preprocessed versions can be used to generate customer segments at global or granular levels for merchandise and location. The user can then perform version actions such as creating, updating, and deleting versions and can use selected versions to define new segment criteria.

		📲 o 🔊 📾 🖻 🗙	- B +						
-	2	l							
	Name 🔺 🤋	Status 🔺 🔻	Criteria Count	Last Updated On	Last Updated By	Created By	Merchandise	Location	System Genera Version
	SL_VERSION_8_17_GROCERY_SHELF	Version Setup Complete	0	8/17/2016	orase1	orase1	19 - grocery shelf	0 - CHAIN	No
	SYS_0_20160816	Version Ready for Use	1	8/16/2016	cis_sys_cfg	cis_sys_cfg	CHAIN - CHAIN	0 - CHAIN	Yes

Figure 5-2 Version List Tab

The Version List, which, by default, lists the global segment version, is defined as part of the batch process. This version is defined for all merchandise and all locations. The version has three key components: filtering, sampling, and attribute mining. It helps when performing the preprocessing of granular customer segments for departments such as men/women/children or segments such as health and beauty, because customers who are shopping for such categories can differ from customers who are shopping for groceries. These segments can be used by applications such as CMPO for planning at the global level or for promotion planning for granular level segments. The version list is sorted by last update, in descending order. The version status is sorted in descending order. The name is sorted in ascending order. Searching, using QBE and a search panel option, is provided for both basic and advanced searches.

## **Version Actions**

The following actions are available.

Figure 5-3	Actions
------------	---------





- Create, edit, and delete a version. If a version has a status of Ready for Use and at least one segment is associated with the version, then edit and delete are not available.
- Execute version. This is available when the setup is complete.
- Create a customer segment using an existing version. This opens the Generate Customer Segment tab. The New Segment Criteria pop-up is displayed, and the default values are filled in. (See the defaults that are selected on selection of the version in segment criteria.) This option is only available if the version has a status of Ready for Use.

Name	Description
Name	The name of the version.
Criteria Count	The number of criteria associated with the version. When you click the link, a pop-up is displayed that lists the segment criteria details that are associated with the version.
Last Updated By	The name of the user who updated the version most recently.
Last Updated On	The date when the version was last updated.
Created By	The name of the user who created the version.
Status	The current status of the version. Values include Version Setup Complete, Filtering Completed, Sampling Completed Successfully, Attribute Mining Completed Successfully, Version Ready for Use.
Merchandise	The merchandise node defined for the version.
Location	The location node defined for the version.
System Generated Version	This column provides a flag indicating whether or not the version has been created using a batch process and is set up with a default configuration.

#### Table 5-2 Version Details

## Version Criteria Pop-up

This section describes the Version Criteria pop-up, shown in Figure 5-4.



	eria					
Name				Location	Location Hierarchy	•
					COMPANY	-
Merchandise	Product Hierarchy	<b>•</b>			0 - CHAIN	-
	COMPANY	<b>_</b>			U- CHAIN	
	0 - CHAIN	•				
Period Level			Start Period		End Period	
Fiscal Year			2010		▼ 2011	-

Figure 5-4 Version Criteria Pop-Up

#### Merchandise

Once you choose the merchandise level for the version, you must select the hierarchy node. The merchandise defined as part of the version is then used for creating segments.

#### Location

Once you choose the location level for the version, you must select the hierarchy node. These are specific to the location level you select. The location defined as part of the version is then used for creating segments.

## Source Time Period

Select historical sales data for the version. You can specify more than one time period. Source time periods selected as part of the version are then applicable for the segments.

Time Period	Description
Period Level	Select from Fiscal Year, Fiscal Quarter, Fiscal Period, or Fiscal Week.
Start Period	Once you select the Period Level, select the starting subdivision within that period.
End Period	Once you select the Start Period, select the End Period.

Table 5-3 Source Time Period



## **Top Categories**

Use this pop-up to select top categories by reviewing category KPIs, such as Sales Share, Revenue, and Margin. The system selects the top categories by each department. You can override these top categories further while defining versions for merchandise. By default, the top categories in the selected merchandise are driven based on the sales share for each category. You can remove categories to reduce processing time and storage, using the user interface and adding emerging to the top category list.

#### **Version Status**

The version status has one of the following values.

Table 5-4	Version	Status
-----------	---------	--------

Status	Description
Version Setup Complete	Indicates that version setup is complete.
Filtering Completed with Errors	Indicates that version filtering has completed with errors.
Filtering Execution in Progress	Indicates that version filtering is in progress.
Filtering Completed Successfully	Indicates that version filtering has completed successfully.
Sampling Completed with Errors	Indicates that sampling has completed with errors.
Sampling Execution in Progress	Indicates that sampling execution is in progress.
Sampling Completed Successfully	Indicates that sampling has completed successfully.
Attribute Mining Completed with Errors	Indicates that attribute mining has completed with errors.
Attribute Mining Execution in Progress	Indicates that attribute mining execution is in progress.
Attribute Mining Completed Successfully	Indicates that attribute mining has completed successfully.
Version Ready for Use	Indicates that all three execution phases (filtering, sampling, and attribute mining) have completed successfully. Once the version is ready for use, it is ready for the creation of segment criteria.

## Generate Customer Segments Tab

The Generate Customer Segments tab is used to create segments and then model the segments with various scenarios in order to determine the best set of segments. It consists of three stages: Segment Criteria, Segment Results, and Segment Insights.



asks	Dashboard × Generate Customer Segmen	×				
Dashboard     Dashboard     Customer Segmentation		Segment Seg	ment S sults I	Begment Insights Bac	k Next Explore	e Data Action 🔻 Canc
Customer Segmentation Ove Generate Customer Segmen	All Segment Criteria					
Generale Gustoniei Segmen	Filters     Merchandise     0 - CH4/N     V     Location       Actions -     View -     •     •     •       •     •     •     •     •	o-CHAIN  Calendar Winter Jan 18  Actions  View  Format	•	W × 11 00		4
2	Category Purchase Customer Demographics	Name	Status	of Number of Attributes Segments	Minimum Number of Segments	Optimal Number of Segments Rank Sequence
	RFM and Customer Behavior		Created	2	20	1

Figure 5-5 Generate Customer Segments Tab

## Segment Criteria Stage

Use the Segment Criteria stage to view summary data about existing segments and define the characteristics of new segments.

#### Process

Here is the high-level process for defining a segment.

- 1. Provide a unique name for the segment.
- 2. Define the type of data used to characterize the segment.
- 3. Select the merchandise and location nodes.
- 4. Define the time period for the segment.
- 5. Define the historical time period for the data.

### All Segment Criteria

In this area of the page you can view information about existing segments.

Use the View list to select existing segment criteria. You can tailor your search for existing segment criteria by Merchandise, Location, and Calendar. Once you select the segment criteria, the defining details for the segment criteria are displayed in the Worksheet area.



#### Figure 5-6 All Segment Criteria

	Segn Crite	nent S eria F	Segment Results	Segment Insights						
							Back Next	Explore Data	Action <b>v</b>	Cance
II Segment Criteria Ilters Merchandise 0-CHAIN ▼ Location	0 - CHAIN Viter Jan 18									
Actions - View - G www.		•	/ 🤑 🗙	n 🔁		1.4				
🦻 🖻 🔞	4									
Category Purchase Customer Demographics	Name	Status		Maximum Number of Segments	Minimum Number of Segments		hor of N	tank jequence	System Preferred	User Prefe
RFM and Customer Behavior	Scenario_Trips_SalesRetail	Created	2		20	1			-N/A-	
	Scenario_CategoryShare	Created	1		20	1			-N/A-	

#### **Toolbar Buttons**

The Toolbar buttons are shown in Figure 5-7.

#### Figure 5-7 Toolbar

Actions - View - 🕑 🖤 🥒 💥 🧮 🏗	Actions + View + Format + 🗗 🖻 🖗 🥒 🤁 🗶 🕄 🚳 📑 💷 🛃
🧐 🖻 👹	

You can use the Toolbar buttons to:

- Create segment criteria. You can define an initial segment. The criteria include segment name, the merchandise for the segment, the effective date for the segment, and the history to use.
- View or edit segment criteria. The characteristics of the segment are displayed in the Segment Criteria pop-up.
- Copy segment criteria. Once you have copied the criteria, you can modify them.
- Delete segment criteria. Delete the selected segment criteria.
- Execute segment criteria. Execute all non-executed scenarios for the selected criteria.
- Evaluate KPIs after the execution of the scenario is complete.
- Refresh all. Refresh all segment criteria in order to view any updates to the existing segment criteria.

### All Segment Criteria Filter

Once you have highlighted the segment criteria to examine, details about the segment criteria are displayed in a pop-up.



#### Figure 5-8 All Segment Criteria Filter

All Seg	ment Criteria								
Filters	Merchandise	0 - CHAIN	•	Location	0 - CHAIN	T	Calendar	Winter Jan 16	•

The details include information about the segment criteria and the scenarios created for segment criteria.

- Merchandise allows the user to filter the existing segment criteria by searching for or selecting the merchandise for the supported hierarchies.
- Location allows the user to filter the existing segment criteria by searching for or selecting the location for the supported hierarchies.
- Calendar allows the user to filter the existing segment criteria by searching for or selecting the calendar for the supported hierarchies.

### All Segment Criteria Summary

Once you have highlighted the segment criteria to examine, details about the segment criteria are displayed in a pop-up.

Figure 5-9 Segment Criteria Details



The details include information about the segment criteria and the scenarios created for the segment criteria.

Field Name	Description
Name	The name of the segment criteria.
Shared Criteria	A check mark indicates that more than one merchandise or location node is used in the segment criteria.
Merchandise Type	The merchandise type.
Location Type	The location type.
Segment By	A set of attributes to be used in the creation of the segment criteria: Customer Demographics, RFM and Customer Behavior, Category Purchase Driven.
Scenario Created	The number of scenarios created for the segment.

Table 5-5 Pop-Up Details



Table 5-5	(Cont.) Pop-Up Details
-----------	------------------------

Field Name	Description
Scenario Executed	The number of scenarios executed for the segment.

## All Segment Criteria Scenario List

This displays the scenarios for the selected segment criteria in the All Segment Criteria tree.

Field Name	Description			
Name	The name assigned to each scenario that has been created for the segment.			
Status	Created, Ready for Preview, Ready for Approval, Completed with Errors, Approved, Rejected.			
Rank	The system-calculated rank for the segment.			
Optimal # of Segments	The system-calculated optimal number of segment centers.			
User Preferred	Indicates whether or not the user prefers the segment.			
System Preferred	Indicates whether or not the system prefers the segment.			
# of Attributes	The number of attributes that were used in the segment.			
Max. # of Segments	A user-provided value for the maximum segment centers that the segmenting process should consider.			
Min. # of Segments	A user-provided value for the minimum segments centers that the segmenting process should consider.			

Table 5-6 Scenario List

## Segment Criteria

In this pop-up, you define the initial segmenting parameters for the segment criteria of a new segment. Note that the hierarchy type supported can be configured at the time of deployment.

Figure 5-10 illustrates how to use a simple approach to segmenting by selecting attributes from a Segment by. For example, you can select the RFM and Customer Behavior Segment by and generate segments using the total number of trips and the amount spent by customer.



					^	Segment By - Cust
Version	* SYS_0_20160817 •					Primary Scenario :
Name						Status 🔲 Create
Segment By	Customer Demographics	Templates	No Templates configured			Maximum Number of 20
Merchandise	Cat-Man Group Hierarchy	Location	Location Hierarchy			Segments Minimum
	CHAIN		COMPANY	~		Number of 1 Segments
	CHAIN - CHAIN		0 - CHAIN	*		Attributes
Effective Period	a				-	J Demographic
Finand Desired	<ul> <li>Fiscal Year</li> </ul>	Dispersion Desired	) Winter Dec 16	-	= •	Coverage Cov
	2016 V	Calaat Dataa				Income
	2010	Select Dates	2			Custome
						Туре
						Marital Status
Source Time Period	od 🕐					
✓ Source Time Perio	• bc					Age Range
		Start	Period	End Period		

Figure 5-10 New Segment Criteria Pop-Up

The following information defines a segment:

#### Table 5-7 New Segment Definition

Field Name	Description				
Name	A unique name to identify the segment.				
Version	Select a predefined version to use for creating segment criteria. When the version is selected, the merchandise and location are selected, based on the version.				
Segment By	A predefined group of attributes that include Customer Demographics, RFM and Customer Behavior, Category Purchase Driven. These criteria types are sets of attributes. For example, customer demographics are the properties of a customer. These properties can include ethnicity, income, and age.				
Merchandise Merchandise is selected based on the version selected fo segment criteria.					
Location	Location is selected based on the version selected for the segment criteria.				
Template	Template is selected based on the version selected for the segment criteria.				

## **Effective Period**

You can define a time interval for the segment by either choosing a period from the list provided or by selecting a start date and an end date.

To define the Effective Period, you select either Planning Period, Fiscal Period, or Select Date.



Option	Description
Fiscal Period	If you select this option, choose the period and the subdivisions of that period from the drop-down lists.
Planning Period	Select from the range of values provided for the period. Planning periods are user-defined buying periods for a season or a season subset.
Select Dates	If you select this option, choose the start and end dates using the calendar pop-up.

#### Table 5-8 Effective Period

## Summarization

Data summarization is available by default and set to either Category or Sub Category. It is applied to Category Purchase Driven Segment by. The segmentation process considers the top selected categories and their attributes and groups customers based on their sales patterns.

## Source Time Period

Source time periods are selected based on the version selected for the segment criteria.

Field	Description
Period Level	Select from Fiscal Year, Fiscal Quarter, Fiscal Period, or Fiscal Week.
Start Period	Once you select the Period Level, you select the starting subdivision within that period.
End Period	Once you select the Period Level, you select the ending subdivision within that period.

#### Table 5-9 Source Time Period

## **Contextual Area**

When you are creating new segment criteria, you can see details about the following parameters that can help you understand the segment you are creating.

## Segment By Hierarchy

The following information is displayed when you select a template or use the icon to select the Segment by.

Property	Description
Template Name	Name of template configured during deployment.
Description	Description of template.



Property	Description		
Segment By	A predefined group of attributes that include Customer Demographics, RFM and Customer Behavior, Category Purchase Driven. These criteria types are sets of attributes. For example, customer demographics are the properties of a customer. These properties can include ethnicity, income, and age.		

Table 5-10	(Cont.)	Template	Display
------------	---------	----------	---------

#### Segment By Primary Scenario

You see this when you select Segment by in the Criteria panel when you are setting the segment criteria parameters or when you select Segment by in the contextual area for the hierarchy.

The system displays the primary scenario, its preconfigured properties, and the significant attributes identified during the attribute importance process for each segment by.

The following information is displayed.

Property	Description
Name	The name of the primary scenario.
Status	Created, Ready for Preview, Ready for Approval, Completed with Errors, Approved, Rejected.
Maximum # segments	The maximum number of segments. The default value is 20. This is used for analyzing the segments.
Minimum # segments	The minimum number of segments. The default value is 1. This is used for analyzing the segments.
Attribute	A list of the attributes configured during segmentation.
Attribute importance	The weighted average across attributes and importance index for each attribute.

#### Table 5-11 Primary Scenario

#### **Planning Period**

This list displays the time period you selected for the segment criteria. This information is available only for planning periods, where it provides the start and end dates of the planning period. This content changes whenever the planning period is selected in Effective Period when you are setting segment criteria parameters.

## **Explore** Data

Use the Explore Data pop-up to examine data for the segment criteria you defined. You can view the customer and attribute summary that provides input into the segmentation process.



#### Process

In this pop-up you can view criteria and attribute summaries as well as their related contextual BIs.

### Summary

The Summary lists the criteria you initially selected to define the segment.

Field	Description
Name	The name you provided for the segment in the Segment Criteria stage.
Segment By	A predefined group of attributes that include Customer Demographics, RFM and Customer Behavior, Category Purchase Driven. These criteria types are sets of attributes. For example, customer demographics are the properties of a customer. These properties can include ethnicity, income, and age.
Merchandise	The merchandise level and nodes for the segment.
Location	The location level and nodes for the segment.
Fiscal Period	The time period for the segment.
Merchandise Hierarchy Type	Details about which type of hierarchy the segment criteria have been created for.

Table 5-12 Explore Data: Summary

## Attribute Mining

This screen provides you with insights about the attribute mining process, which lists the attributes' significance and their correlations. The attributes required for the customer segmentation process come from different dimensions such as customers, their households, demographics, and purchasing behaviors. This process helps to eliminate redundant attributes and to identify the attributes that may have the most influence on generating customer segment. The attribute summary displays information about data availability and data quality by providing the attributes' distinct values, percentage of nulls, and statistics summaries, such as mean, median, and standard deviation.

## Attribute Importance

Along with attribute summaries, the system generates an attribute importance index that sums up data quality, data distribution, and its representation of each attribute in the data. See Figure 5-11.



Summary												
tribute Importance	Attribute Correlation	n										
Actions - View -	Format -	<b>B</b>	Freez	e 🚮 Detach	🚽 Wrap							
Group Name	Name	Importance Indicator		Percent Aull	Distinct Values	Mode	Average	Median	Minimum Value	Maximum Value	Standard Deviation	Variance
Purchase Behavior	Total Sales Retail	<ul><li><b>⊙</b> 2.32<sup>-</sup></li></ul>	171	0%	12662		\$18.1	\$10.2	\$0.3	\$240.0	\$21.4	
Purchase Behavior	Total Sales Margin	合 1.67	2736	0%	60198		\$1.4	\$0.8	\$0.0	\$30.0	\$1.7	
Purchase Behavior	Total Sales Unit	合 0.97	0595	0%	173		10	6	1	247	12.1	
Purchase Behavior	Total Number of Skus	☆ 0.82	4024	0%	96		7.7	5	1	128	8.6	
Purchase Behavior	Customer Average Number of Trips	☆ 0.71	2726	0%	44		1.5	1	0.3	11	1.4	
Purchase Behavior	Total Number of Trips	合 0.71	2726	0%	44		5.8	4	1	44	5.8	
Product Purchase	Category Average Number of Trips	合 0.64	6593	26.1%	44		1.1		0.3	11		
Product Purchase	Category Number of Trins	☆ 0.64	6593	26.1%	44		4.3		1	44		

#### Figure 5-11 Attribute Importance

The system indicates the relative importance of attributes, based on upper and lower threshold values.

#### Table 5-13 Attribute Importance Values

Category	Range
Low Importance	Minimum value for the lower threshold, indicated in red.
Average Importance	Values between the lower threshold and the upper threshold, indicated in yellow.
High Importance	Values above the upper threshold are indicated in green and are the best candidates for mining attributes.

The following attributes are displayed in Attribute Importance.

#### Table 5-14 Attributes

Attribute Name	Description
Group Name	The attribute group name (attributes such as demographics, purchase behavior, or product profile).
Name	The name of the attribute (for example, income, ethnicity, or total sales retail)
Histogram	The spark chart for displaying the attribute distribution. This corresponds to the current data distribution graph.
Importance Indicator	The attribute importance index with an image to indicate if attribute has high, average, or low importance.
Percent Null	The percentage of data that is null for the attribute.
Distinct Value	The distinct value applicable to discrete attributes. If no value is available, this is empty.
Mode	The most common value of the discrete attributes. If no value is available, this is empty.



Attribute Name	Description
Average	The mean value of the numeric attributes. If no value is available, this is empty.
Median	The median value of the numeric attributes. If no value is available, this is empty.
Minimum Value	The minimum value of the numeric attributes. If no value is available, this is empty.
Maximum Value	The maximum value of the numeric attributes. If no value is available, this is empty.
Standard Deviation	The standard deviation indicates the deviation from the average for the numeric attributes. If no value is available, this is empty.
Variance	The variance indicates the dispersion from the average for the numeric attributes. If no value is available, this is empty.

#### Table 5-14 (Cont.) Attributes

## Attribute Correlation

The attribute mining process generates a correlation between customer attributes and products. This information can help you understand which combination of customer attributes may drive product purchase behavior.

Summary bute Importance Attribute Correlation					
ters Customer Attributes All マ タ Products All マ タ					
/lew - Format - 📳 🏢 Freeze 📓 Detach 🦳 Wrap				Value of Correlation Coefficient	Strength of Relationshi
Customer Attributes	Attribute Values	COFFEE- COFFEE	YOGURT- YOGURT	0.5 to 1.0	
Total Sales Retail		-0.28	-0.61	0.3 to 0.5	
Total Sales Margin		-0.28	-0.61	0.1.to 0.3	Weak
Total Sales Unit		-0.51	-0.41	-0.1 to 0.1	Negligible
Total Number of Skus		-0.58	-0.4	-0.3 to -0.	Weak
Customer Average Number of Trips		-0.55	-0.37	-0.5 to -0.	Moderate
Total Number of Trips		-0.55	-0.37	-1.0 to -0.1	Strong
Loyalty Score	Very High	-0.06	-0.34		

## Filter

You can use customer and product filters to reduce the number of customer and product attributes that are displayed in the correlation matrix.

Figure 5-13 Customer and Product Filter

Filters Custo	omer Attributes All	Products All	<b>▼</b> 2
---------------	---------------------	--------------	------------



## **Correlation Matrix**

The correlation matrix displays attributes, attributes values (in the case of discrete attributes), and correlations between customer and products. Each cell in the matrix provides a visual indication of how attributes are correlated, along with the correlation value. Various colors indicate the strength of the correlation among attributes, with -1 and 1 indicating strong association.

Table 5-15 shows the strength of the correlation for the different ranges of values for the correlation coefficient.

Correlation Coefficient Value	Strength of Relationship
1.0 to 0.5	Strong
0.3 to 0.5	Moderate
0.1 to 0.3	Weak
-0.1 to 0.1	None or very weak
-0.3 to -0.1	Weak
-0.5 to -0.3	Moderate
-1.0 to -0.5	Strong

Table 5-15 Correlation Coefficient Values

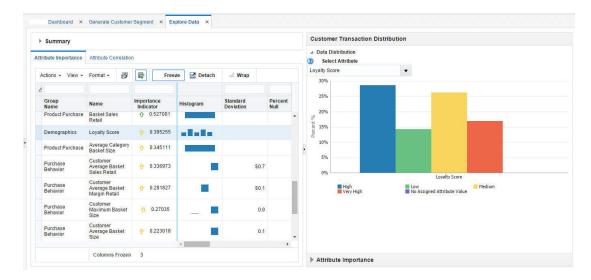
## **Contextual Area**

This area provides graphical illustrations of the detailed data distribution about the customers and their attribute importance.

## Analyze Customers

In Explore Data, the BI displays the data distribution of the customers by each participating attribute as well as other configured informational attributes. Customer Segmentation identifies the bins based on the underlying sample data and displays the histograms. It provides the percentage of customers that are present in a selected location. For example, a company may have ten percent of premium customers who are high spenders and who shop frequently.





#### Figure 5-14 Analyze Customers

## Attribute Importance

The attributes are ranked in order of their significance in predicting a target (the default is set to Customer Total Spent) and by analyzing the quality and variability of the data. The results in Figure 5-15 shows that loyalty score and income have the most effect on whether or not the customer spends more shopping at the retailer.

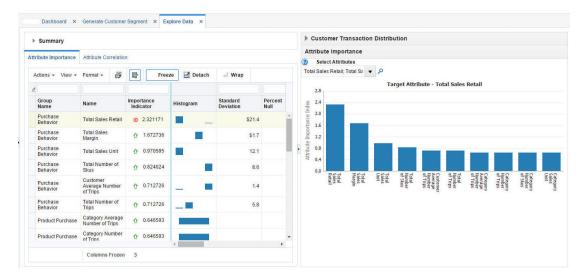


Figure 5-15 Attribute Importance

## Segment Setup Stage

You can use this stage to perform what-if analysis by defining one or more scenarios that are based on a specified number of segments and attributes. You can select one or more attributes based on the attribute importance index. The attribute importance index guides you when you are defining the scenario setup. Using these scenarios, you can experiment with different numbers of segments and participating attributes. You can either define the



maximum number or the minimum number of segments or alternatively define a specific number of segments that you want to be generated. Once the scenarios are generated, different scenarios can be compared. You can also use other features in this stage to copy or delete scenarios.

	finition Scenario List	Scenario Compa	re		
+ ×					
	Select Scenario	Scenario_Purcha	ase_Behav 💌		
	* Name	Scenario_Purcha	se_Behavior		
? *	Maximum Number of Segments	20			
?	<sup>*</sup> Minimum Number of Segments	1			
	Exact Number of Segments				
Sear	rch				Advanced
		*	軍 預 12		
	View 👻 🛄 🝫				
	View - 🛄 🖋		Attributes	Importance 🔺 🔻	
	S. 22 Markov		Attributes	Importance	<b>.</b>
Actions -	Attribute Group		Attributes Total Sales Retail		Î

#### Figure 5-16 Segment Setup

#### Process

Here is the high-level process for setting up scenarios.

- 1. Either select the name of a scenario you want to modify or enter the name for the new segment criteria you want to create.
- 2. If you want the application to optimize the number of segments, enter the minimum and maximum values for the number of segments.
- **3.** If you want the application to generate a specific number of segments, enter that value. In this case, the application generates the exact number of segments and provides the optimal number of segments as informational data.
- 4. Optionally, review the attribute importance assigned to the attributes and select an attribute if you want a specific attribute to be part of the segmentation process.
- 5. Click the **Execute** icon to execute the scenario. Once the processing is complete, you see the results in the Segment Results stage.
- 6. To see a list of all scenarios and the status for each, go to the Scenario List tab.

## Scenario Definition Tab

This section describes the Scenario Definition tab.



cenario De	finition Scenario List	Scenario Compan	9))		
+ ×					
	Select Scenario	Scenario_Purchas	se_Behav 🔻		
	* Name	Scenario_Purchas	e_Behavior		
? *	Maximum Number of Segments	20			
?	<sup>*</sup> Minimum Number of Segments	1			
	Exact Number of Segments				
▹ Sear	rch				A <u>d</u> vanced
Actions -	- View - 🛄 🗳	*	TE 13		
	Attribute Group		Attributes	Importance 🔺 🔻	
4	Purchase Behavior			0.953	*
		<b>~</b>	Total Sales Retail	⊙ 2.321171	
		<b>v</b>	Total Sales Margin	<b>介</b> 1.672736	

Figure 5-17 Scenario Definition Tab

The following information defines a scenario.

Table 5-16 Scenario Definition

Field Name	Description
Select Scenario	Select an existing scenario if you want to modify it.
Name	A unique name that identifies the scenario being defined.
Max. # of Segments	Set the maximum number for the total number of segments that can be generated. The application determines the optimal number of segments during the generation process.
Min. # of Segments	Set the minimum number for the total number of segments that can be generated. The application determines the optimal number of segments during the generation process.
Exact # of Segments	Indicates that the exact number of segments should be generated. The application does not determine the optimal number of segments.

#### Attributes

The Attributes table is used to define which attributes are included in the segment criteria. You can

- search by attribute, attribute value, or attribute importance
- select and deselect attributes

The following information defines the attributes that are participating or non-participating.



Field Name	Description
Participating	A check in this column indicates that the attribute participates in the segment criteria.
Attribute Group	A logical grouping of attributes such as demographics or purchase behavior.
Attributes	Attributes that are potential candidates for generating segments
Importance	System-generated attribute importance index that indicates the significance of each attribute.

#### Table 5-17Attributes

The Attributes toolbar includes the following functionality:

#### Figure 5-18 Attribute Toolbar



### Table 5-18 Attribute Toolbar

Function	Description
Action menu	Resets the attribute selection to the default selection that system identified using attribute importance thresholds.
Include or exclude attributes	Any attribute beyond a certain threshold is not included in the segmentation process.

#### **Contextual Area**

The contextual business intelligence lists a set of attributes that the current scenario includes as the participating attributes for the segmentation process.



enario Det	finition Scenario List	Scenario	Compan	е			Scenario Attributes - Scenario_Purchase_B	ehav	ior	
2 505							Attributes	Imp	oortance	
+ ×							Purchase Behavior - Total Sales Retail	0	2.321171	
	Select Scenario	Scenario	_Purcha	se_Behav 🔻			Purchase Behavior - Total Sales Margin	Û	1.672736	
	* Name	Scenario	_Purchas	se_Behavior			Purchase Behavior - Total Sales Unit	Û	0.970595	
? *	Maximum Number of Segments	20					Purchase Behavior - Total Number of Skus	Û	0.824024	
? *	Minimum Number of Segments	1					Purchase Behavior - Customer Average Number of Trips	Û	0.712726	
	Exact Number of Segments					Ð	Purchase Behavior - Total Number of Trips	Û	0.712726	
▶ Sear	ch				A <u>d</u> vanced		Purchase Behavior - Customer Average Basket Sales Retail	Û	0.336973	
Actions +	View - 🛄 🗸	*		電 預 報			Purchase Behavior - Customer Average Basket Margin Retail	Û	0.281827	
	Attribute Group			Attributes	Importar		Purchase Behavior - Customer Maximum Basket Size	û	0.27035	
4	Purchase Behavior				0.953		Purchase Behavior - Customer Average Basket Size	Ŷ	0.223018	
			<b>v</b>	Total Sales Retail	⊙ 2.32		Purchase Behavior - Customer Minimum Basket Size	Ŷ	0.014307	
			~	Total Sales Margin	<b>企 1.6</b> 7		Purchase Behavior - Customer Promo Sales Share	Ŷ	0.005804	
							Purchase Behavior - Total Promo Sales Retail	200	0.005804	

Figure 5-19 Scenario Definition: Contextual Area

## Scenario List Tab

The Scenario List summarizes the characteristics for each scenario.

ctions	- View + Format + 🕛 💥 🛃 🖻 🔞	-				
	Name	Status	Number of Attributes	Exact Number of Segments	Maximum Number of Segments	Minimum Number of Segments
	Scenario_AmountSpent	Ø Assessment in Progress	1	×	20	1
	Scenario_AmountSpent_Trips	Assessment in Progress	2	×	20	1
	Scenario_NumberOfTrips	Ready for Preview	1	×	20	1

Figure 5-20 Scenario List Tab

You can make a copy of a specific scenario in order to modify it in some way, delete a specific scenario, execute a specific scenario, or save a specific scenario. You can also refresh the scenario list in order to view the updated scenario status.



Description
The unique name that identifies the scenario.
These include Created, Ready for Preview, Ready for Approval, Completed with Errors, Approved, Rejected.
The number of attributes is defined by the Segment by option you select.
If you provided a value for this in the scenario definition, that number is displayed here.
If you provided a value for this in the scenario definition, that number is displayed here.

Table 5-19 Scenario List

## Scenario Compare Tab

You can select two scenarios from the list to compare. The scenarios you select from the Scenario list are shown side-by-side to facilitate this.

Select Scenario_NumberOfTrips		Select Scenario to Compare Scenario_AmountSpent_Trips V				
Maximum Number of Segments Minimum Number of Segments		Maximum Number of Segments 20 Minimum Number of Segments 1				
/iew 🕶 Format 🕶 🔛 🚽		View - Format -				
Attributes	Importance	Attributes	Importance			
Purchase Behavior - Total Sales Retail	☆ 2.321171	Purchase Behavior - Total Sales Retail	☆ 2.321171			
Purchase Behavior - Total Sales Margin	☆ 1.672736	Purchase Behavior - Total Sales Margin	↑ 1.672736			
Purchase Behavior - Total Sales Unit	☆ 0.970595	Purchase Behavior - Total Sales Unit	☆ 0.970595			
Purchase Behavior - Total Number of Skus	☆ 0.824024	Purchase Behavior - Total Number of Skus				
Purchase Behavior - Customer Average Number of Trips	☆ 0.712726	Purchase Behavior - Customer Average Number of Trips	☆ 0.712726			
Purchase Behavior - Total Number of Trips	☆ 0.712726	Purchase Behavior - Total Number of Trips	☆ 0.712726			

Figure 5-21 Scenario Compare Tab

# Segment Results Stage

After you select a scenario and execute it, you can see the results in this stage. The application uses the data and the parameters you defined in order to group customers together that are most similar according to the characteristics you selected and to separate customers that are most dissimilar. You can also use this stage to rename a segment.



#### Process

You use this stage to review segments and their composition, using the grid view and the graph view. This includes

- Review a segment to see the goodness of fit by using the scores. Determine if any segments are outliers that warrant further analysis.
- Rank the scenarios (segment sets) to see how well they are separated and how compact the customers are within each segment.
- View the optimality of the segments recommended by the application to determine if increasing the number of segments beyond the optimal number is significant.
- Rename the segment after analyzing the centroids and before the segment is approved.

## Summary

This lists the criteria you initially selected to define the segment.

#### Figure 5-22 Results Summary

Summary			
Name	RFM and Customer Behavior	Segment By	RFM and Customer Behavior
Merchandise	Product Hierarchy CMP 0 - CHAIN	Location	Location Hierarchy COMPANY 0 - CHAIN
Planning Period	Winter Jan 16		

#### Table 5-20 Segment Criteria Summary

Field	Description
Name	The name you provided for the segment in the Segment Criteria stage.
Segment By	A predefined group of attributes that include Customer Demographics, RFM and Customer Behavior, and Category Purchase Driven. These criteria types are sets of attributes. For example, customer demographics are the properties of a customer. These properties can include ethnicity, income, and age.
Merchandise	The merchandise level and nodes for the segment.
Location	The location level and nodes for the segment.
Fiscal Period	The time period for the segment.
Merchandise Hierarchy Type	Provides details about which type of hierarchy the segment criteria have been created for.

## Scenario Results Section

The Scenario Results section displays the following:

- The Scenario Summary, which provides key segment set attributes for the executed scenario as well as its status.
- The Scenario Results, which has two tabs: Segments and Segment Composition.



					Segment Criteria	Segment Results	Segment Insights					
								Back	Next	Explore Data	Action	▼ Ca
Summ	nary											
enario Re	esults Scenario List S	Scenario Comp	are									
Filters	Scenario Name Scenario	AmountSpent Tri	5	▼ Merchandise		ocation a-CHAIN -	Calendar	2015				
E				• merchandise			Calendar					
h Cum												
r sun	mmary ③											
Segment		on										
100000100	ts Segment Compositi	on								Graph \	/iew Tabl	le View
Segment	ts Segment Compositi	on	8 4	Π						Graph \	/iew Tabl	le View
Segment	nts Segment Compositi		Has Low Score	1 Number of Customers	% of Total Customers	Nearest Segment Name	Has Outlier	Purchase Behavior - Total Number of Trips		Graph \ Purchase Behavie Retail		
Segment Segme Actions -	nts Segment Compositi nents • View • Format •	B Score	Has Low	Number of	Customers	Segment Name	Has Outlier		9.2	Purchase Behavio		
Segment Segme Actions •	ats Segment Compositi ents • View • Format • Name	Score (%)	Has Low Score	Number of Customers	Customers 5 23.45%	Segment Name Uncommitted	×			Purchase Behavio		les
Segment Segme Actions • C C C	segment Compositi ents View - Format - Name Polential Segment	Score (%) 75%	Has Low Score	Number of Customers 97269	Customers 5 23.45% 7 8.21%	Segment Name Uncommitted Segment	×		9.2	Purchase Behavio		les \$27.8
Segment Segment Actions • C C C C C C C C C C C C C	segment Compositi ents View - Format - Name Potential Segment Standard Segment	Score (%) 75% 81%	Has Low Score	Number of Customers 97269 34048	Customers 5 23.45% 7 8.21% 0 66.30%	Segment Name Uncommitted Segment Potential Segment Potential Segment	×××		9.2 16.9	Purchase Behavio		les \$27.8 \$52.4

Figure 5-23 Customer Segmentation Scenario Results

The Summary section provides an overview of the characteristics of the scenario.

 Table 5-21
 Scenario Results Summary

Field	Description
Status	Ready for Preview, Ready for Approval, Approved, Rejected.
Optimal # of Segments	The optimal number of segments determined by the optimization.
Rank	The application compares executed scenarios and ranks them. A value of 1 indicates the best scenario.
Max./Min # of Segments	The number you provided for the maximum and minimum number of segments to calculated.
Largest/Smallest Segment	Provides the sizes of the largest segment and the smallest segment in order to show the range of values.
Is System Preferred	Indicates whether or not the system prefers the scenario.
Is User Preferred	Indicates whether or not the user prefers the scenario.

The Segments section provides the segment results for each individual segment in the scenario in either a Graph View or a Table View. The attributes displayed depend on the Segment by option chosen in the Segment Criteria stage.

The Graph View shows the percentage for each attribute in the segment.



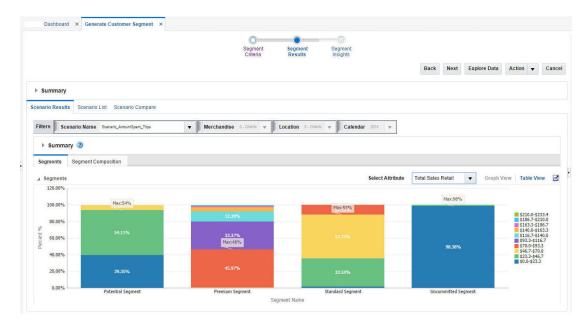


Figure 5-24 Segments Graph View

The Table View provides details that can help you analyze the segment.

Table 5-22	Scenario Results	- Segments:	<b>Table View</b>
------------	------------------	-------------	-------------------

Field	Description
Name	The name you assigned to the segment.
# of Customers	The number of customers in the segment.
% of Total Customers	The percentage of the total customers that the number of customers represents.
Nearest Segment Name	The name of the segment that is most similar to this segment.
Score %	This value is calculated at the level of customer and then averaged to the segment. The probability, expressed as a percent, of a customer being present in this segment rather than any of the other segments. See Segment Scores.
Has Outlier	Indicates a segment with the number of customers below a threshold. For example, the number of customers are below certain percentage of the number of customers in a segment. See Outlier Indicator.

The Segment Composition sub-tab breaks down the segment into its component parts and shows the percentages for each attribute.



## Figure 5-25 Segment Composition

Back     Next     Explore Data     Action     C       > Summary       Filters     Scenario Comparis       Filters     Scenario Comparis       Segment Composition       Segment Compositi		Segment Se	ngment Segment esults Insights			
Scenario Lati         Scenario Compare           Fibers         Scenario Lati         Scenario Compare           Fibers         Scenario Name         Scenario Name         Calendar 2019           > Summary          Scenario Name         Scenario Name         Scenario Name           Segments         Segment Composition         Select Segment         Y Brain Mark         Y Brain Mark           Segment Composition         Select Segment         Y Bential Segment         Y Brain Mark         Y Brain Mark           Actions + View + Farmat +         Y Brain Mark         Segment Composition         Select Segment         Y Brain Mark         Y Brain Mark           Attribute         Support (%)         Confidence (%)         Mode         Mean         Y Brain Mark           Total Number of Trips         19.8%         33.3%         Select Segment         7.5				Back	Next Explore Da	ta Action 👻 Car
Riters Scenario Name Scenari Name Scenario Name Scenario Name Scenario Name Scenario	Summary					
Summary         Segment Composition         Select Segment         Potential Segment         Image: Composition           A segment Composition         Select Segment         Potential Segment         Image: Composition         Image	enario Results Scenario List Scenario Compare					
Segment Composition         Segment Composition         Segment Composition         Select Segment         V         P         Graph View         Table View           Actions v View + Femal + B         B	Filters Scenario Name Scenario_AmountSpent_Trips	▼ Merchandise 0-CHAIN ▼ Locat	ion 0-CHAIN 🔻 Calendar 2015	i w		
Segment Composition         Segment Composition         Segment Composition         Select Segment         V         P         Graph View         Table View           Actions v View + Femal + B         B			N			
Actions - View - Format -	Summary 3					
Attribute         Support (%)         Confidence (%)         Mode         Mean         Variance           Total Number of Trips         19.8%         33.3%         9.2         7.5						
Total Number of Trips         198%         33.3%         9.2         7.5	Segments Segment Composition		Seler	ct Segment Potential Segme	ent 🔻 Gra	ph View Table View
Total Number of Trips         198%         33.3%         9.2         7.5	Segments Segment Composition	8 4	Sele	ct Segment Polential Segme	ent 🔻 Gra	ph View Table View
	Segments Segment Composition	5 of 1	Sele	ct Segment Potential Segme	ent 🔻 Gra	ph View Table View
Total Sales Retail 21.5% 33.3% \$27.8 \$130.3	Segments Segment Composition A Segment Composition Actions • View • Format • P F C					
	Segments Segment Composition  Segment Composition  Actions  View  Format	Support (%)	Confidence (%)		Mean	Variance
	Segments Segment Composition  A Segment Composition  Actions + View + Format +   Activitie  Total Number of Trips	Support (%) 19.8%	Confidence (%) 33.3%		Mean 9.2	Variance 7.5
	Segments Segment Composition  A Segment Composition  Actions + View + Format +   Activitie  Total Number of Trips	Support (%) 19.8%	Confidence (%) 33.3%		Mean 9.2	Variance 7.5

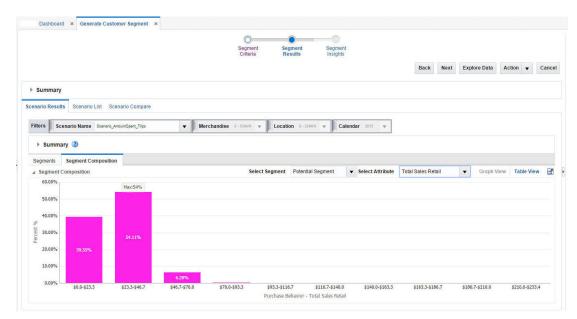
The Table View shows attributes, their confidence, and summary statistics within each segment.

Field	Description
Attribute	The name of the attribute that was used in generating the segment.
Category	The category name, which is only available for Category Purchase Driven segment by.
Support	The percentage of the customers that are concentrated within the segment according to the attribute.
Confidence	Measures the goodness of match between the distribution of the data points for the attribute, indicating the power in recognizing a new pattern in data. An attribute with a higher confidence number plays a more important role in that segment.
Mean	The average value of the numeric attribute within the selected segment. If no value is available, this is empty.
Mode	The most common value of the discrete attributes within the selected segment. If no value is available, this is empty.
Variance	This explains the dispersion from the average for the numeric attributes within the selected segment. If no value is available, this is empty.

 Table 5-23
 Segments Composition Table View

The Graph View shows the segment composition by attribute.





### Figure 5-26 Segment Composition Graph View

## Scenario List

The Scenario List section contains one table with details about each segment. Here, you can evaluate KPIs and approve or reject a segment.

				Segment Cr	iteria	Segment Results	Segment Insights			
								Back	Next Explore Data	Action + Cano
Sumr	mary									
enario R	Results Scenario L	ist Scenario Com	ipare							
ilters	Merchandise CHA	iN - CHAIN +	ocation 0+CHAIN	Calendar 20	16 🐨					
Actions	<ul> <li>View - Format</li> </ul>	- 😰 🗉	Ø @ @	SP ata	⊷ <b>⊠</b> [					
7	Name	Status	Number of Attributes	Maximum Number of Segments	Minimum Number of Segments	Optimal Number of Segments	System Preferred	User Preferred	Rank Sequence	
	Primary Scenario	Approved	1	20		1	4			
	Colur	nns Frozen 2								

Figure 5-27 Segment Results Scenario List

After a segment is approved, it is available for other applications.



Field	Description
Name	The name assigned to the scenario.
Status	Ready for Preview, Ready for Approval, Approved, Rejected.
# of Attributes	The total number of attributes used in the segmentation process.
Max. # of Segments	The value used for the maximum in the scenario execution, if this option used.
Min. # of Segments	The value used for the minimum in the scenario execution, if this option used.
Optimal # of Segments	The value used for the optimal number of segments in the scenario execution, if this option used.
System Preferred	Indicates whether the scenario is the one the application prefers.
User Preferred	Indicates whether the scenario is one the user prefers.
Rank Sequence	Indicates the ranking the scenario is given by the application.

#### Table 5-24 Scenario List

# Scenario Compare

The Scenario Compare section shows two clusters of your choosing side by side so that you can compare the segment results of each, using the same characteristics used in Scenario Results and Scenario List.

	Segme	nt	Segment	Segment						
	Criteria		Results	Insights	Ba	nck Next	Explore Data	Action	•	Cano
Summary										
nario Results Scenario List Scenario Compare										
ilters Merchandise 0-CHAIN v Location 0-CHAIN v	Calendar 201 v									
Select Scenario Scenario_AmountSpent 💌 🕍		^	Select Sce	nario to Compare Scenario_	mountSpent_Trips 💌	<u> </u>				
Maximum Number of Segments 20	Is User Preferred	-N/A-	Ma	ximum Number of Segment	20		Is User Pref	erred -	N/A-	- 1
Minimum Number of Segments 1	Smallest Segment Size	5611	Mi	nimum Number of Segment	i 1		Smallest Segment	Size 8	5153	- 1
Optimal Number of Segments 4	Largest Segment Size	2918!	c	ptimal Number of Segment	s 4		Largest Segmen	Size 2	750490	
Rank	Has Outlier	Yes		Ran	c		Has O	utlier Y	es	- 1
Is System Preferred -N/A-				Is System Preferre	i -N/A-					
Attributes	Importance		• Attributes				h	nportan	e 🔺 🔻	
Purchase Behavior - Total Sales Retail	合 2.321171	^	V Purcha	ise Behavior - Total Sales Re	tail		1	} 2.321	1/1	-
Purchase Behavior - Total Sales Margin			Purchase	Behavior - Total Sales Margin			1	} 1.672	736	
Purchase Behavior - Total Sales Unit	☆ 0.970595		Purchase	Behavior - Total Sales Unit			1	0.970	595	
Purchase Behavior - Total Number of Skus	介 0.824024		Purchase	Behavior - Total Number of S	kus		1	0.824	024	
		- 11	Purchase	Behavior - Customer Average	Number of Trips		4	0.712	726	
Purchase Behavior - Customer Average Number of Trips	☆ 0.712726	*								

#### Figure 5-28 Segment Results Scenario Compare

The information displayed includes:



Field Name	Description
Max. # of Segments	The value used for the maximum in the scenario execution, if this option used.
Min. # of Segments	The value used for the minimum in the scenario execution, if this option used.
Optimal # of Segments	The value used for the optimal number of segments in the scenario execution, if this option used.
Rank	The value for the rank.
Is System Preferred	Indicates whether the scenario is the one the application prefers.
Is User Preferred	Indicates whether the scenario is the one the user prefers.
Smallest Segment Size	The size of the smallest segment.
Largest Segment Size	The size of the largest segment.
Has Outlier	Indicates a segment with the number of customers below a threshold. For example, the number of customers is below a certain percentage of the number of customers in a segment.
Attributes	A list of relevant attributes.

#### Table 5-25 Scenario Compare

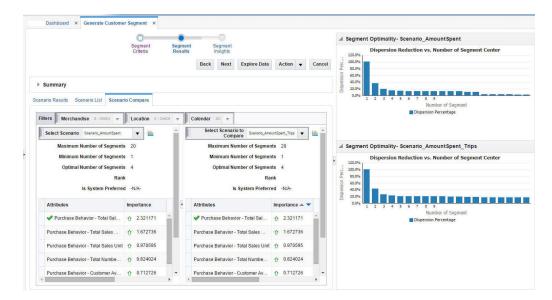
# Scenario System Recommendations

The application provides the following recommendations at the scenario (segment set), segment, and customer levels.

## Scenario Optimality

This graph indicates how the system identifies the best number of segments for a given data set. It starts with a small number of segment centers and searches for the number beyond which there is minimal dispersion. At this point, increasing the number of segment centers any more only reduces dispersion by a small amount, and the marginal improvement is small.





#### Figure 5-29 Scenario Optimality

## Scenario Rank

You can see the ranking of all scenarios in the Segment Results step. The scenario with the highest rank is designated as System Preferred. The ranking is based on the following:

- How many similar customers are contained in the segment.
- How well separated the segments are from each other.

The rank for a scenario is calculated by taking the average of the probability of all the data points in that scenario. A higher probability value for a customer is an indication of the goodness of fit of the segment.

## **Outlier Indicator**

This provides an outlier indicator in the segment list if the segment has an outlier customer. Two outlier rules are supported. The distance from the centroid indicates that if a customer is beyond a certain limit for the configuration threshold from the centroid, then the segment to which the customer belongs is marked as an outlier. When the size of a segment is compared with the total customers, if the number of customers in the segment is below a certain configured percentage of the total customers, then the segment is marked as an outlier. The distance from the centroid is the outlier rule that is configured by default.

## Segment Rules

Segment rules describe the data in each segment where most of the data is concentrated. A rule is a conditional statement that captures the logic of how the system generates the hierarchy of segments and what conditions it uses for further splitting a segment. Each rule describes the conditions for a customer to be assigned with some probability to a segment. Figure 5-30 provides an example of rules.



#### Dashboard × Generate Customer Segment × Segment Optimality- Scenario AmountSpent Trips Segment Insights Segment Segment sion Reduction vs. Number of Back Next Explore Data Action - Cancel Summary Scenario Results Scenario List Scenario Compare Number of Se ▼ Merchandise 0-CHAIN ▼ Location 0-CHAIN ▼ Cale Filters Scenario Name Scenario\_AmountSpent\_Trips Summary 3 ▲ Segment Rule - Premium Segment Segments Segment Composition 🔻 🔲 Wrap 🚮 Select Attributes All Table View 🔡 ▲ Segments If \$70.0 <= Total Sales Retail <= \$140.0 Actions - View - Format - 🔐 🔛 🕰 斗 = and 9.4 <= Total Number of Trips <= 34.6 Score (%) Has Low Number of Customers • Name Has Out then Premium Segment 23.45% Uncommitted Segment • Potential Segment \* 972695 75% \* 81% 340487 Standard Segment 8.21% Potential Segment Uncommitted Segment 87% 22 2750490 66.30% Potential Segment × 85153 2.05% Standard Segment Columns Frozen

#### Figure 5-30 Segment Rules

## Segment Scores

The application provides scores for segments, based on the threshold score. The scoring measures the goodness of a segment. A score for a particular segment is calculated using the average of the probability scores of the customers in a segment. The score is based on the assumption that each customer has an equal chance of being a member of the segment. A high score indicates that the customer is close to the centroid. A low score indicates that the customer is an outlier. The low score indicator is turned on and off.

## **New Customers**

Customer Segmentation supports periodic processing rules in order to allocate customers who are new. If a customer over time has built enough sales history, the system begins to consider customers and allocates them to segments based on the probability scores.

## Generate Store Profile

This allows the user to calculate the sales share of customer segments for each store. These store profiles can be generated by the user from the user interface for the approved customer segments. The store profiles can then be consumed by RI or a subscribing application to be used in generating business reports. The profiles are also consumed in Advanced Store Clustering and used to generate customer-centric store clusters.

## Segment Insights Stage

Use the Insights stage to analyze a scenario, its segments, and its hierarchy, based on performance and attribute contributions, prior to the approval of the scenario. This stage includes the following tabs:

- Customer Segment Analysis
- Category Analysis



Opportunity Analysis

## **Customer Segment Analysis**

The Customer Segment Analysis tab lists all the scenarios, the customer segments for each scenario, and the related KPIs. Aggregates (mean and mode) of the attributes are displayed for each segment. The attributes by default are included in the grids customer purchase behavior and customer demographics.

### Figure 5-31 Customer Segment Analysis

						Segment Criteria	Segment ! Results	Segment Insights					
										Back Next	Explore Data A	tion 🔻	Ca
Summary													
ers Merchandise 0-CHAIN 👻	Loca	tion 0-OHAIN +	Calendar 2	11	v								
itomer Segment Analysis Category Ar	nalysi	s Opportunity Ana	alysis										
Actions - View - »	A	ctions - View -	Format -	1	Г	<b>B</b> 4							
RFM and Customer Behavior     Scenario_AmountSpent     Scenario_AmountSpent_Trips     Scenario_NumberOfTrips		Name	Score (%)			Purchase Behavior - Total Number of Trips	Purchase Behavior - Total Sales Unit	Purchase Behavior - Total Sales Retail	Purchase Behavior - Total Number of Skus	Purchase Behavior - Total Promo Sales Unit	Purchase Behavior - Total Promo Sales Retail	Purchase Behavior - Total Promo Sales Margin	
		CSRF_Segmen	95	16 D	0%	7.4	53.4	\$44.1	33.3	0.0	\$0.0		s
	•	Potential Segment	82	<b>16</b> )	0%	9.5	6.4	\$9.4	5.1	0.0	\$0.0		\$
		Uncommitted Segment	91	<del>76</del> 0	0%	3.1	4.4	\$7.0	3.7	0.0	\$0.0		s
		Standard Segment	90'	96 D	096	5.8	9.7	\$61.2	8.8	0.0	\$0.0		s
					4								

This tab includes the following tasks:

- Evaluate the KPIs for a scenario, it this has not been completed earlier
- Approve a scenario
- Rename segments within a scenario
- · Rank scenarios, if not completed earlier
- Flag a segment scenario as system preferred
- Generate store profile for an approved scenario

## **Category Analysis**

The Category Analysis tab lists the top categories vs. the customer segment matrix. You can analyze the segment performance in each category using different sets of attributes such as sales share or number of trips.





			Bac	k Next Explore Da	ta Action 👻 Can
	Summary				
-	rs Merchandise 0-CHAIN V Location 0-CHAIN V Calendar 201 V				
sto	Imer Segment Analysis Category Analysis Opportunity Analysis				
V	ew + Format + 📑 💿 Freeze 🚮 Detach 🚽 Wrap Scenario Scenari	o_AmountSpent_Trips 💌			
		Amountspen_trips			
	All				
ń	Categories	Uncommitted Segment	Potential Segment	Premium Segment	Standard Segment
ę	COFFEE	82%	69%	67%	629
	YOGURT	68%	44%	34%	423

The system highlights the top three performing segments for each category, and you can compare category performance across segments. You can filter categories or select a set of segments while comparing the results.

Table 5-26 Axis

Field	Description
Columns	The segments for the selected scenario.
Rows	The top identified categories in the preprocessing.
Cell	The KPI values based on the attribute selected.

# **Opportunity Analysis Tab**

The Opportunity Analysis tab provides a comparison of the retailer to market data analysis for the category and provides an analysis about where there is an opportunity for the retailer to grow for each segment.



### Figure 5-33 Opportunity Analysis

Segment Segme Criteria Result	nt Segment s Insights				
			Back Next	Explore Data	Action 👻 Can
Summary					
ers Merchandise 0-CHAIN + Location 0-CHAIN + Calendar 201 +					
tomer Segment Analysis Category Analysis Opportunity Analysis					
View - Format - 🔄 Freeze 🔛 Detach 4 Wrap Scenario Scenario_AmountSpent_					
All	All				
Categories	Segments	Average Spend on a Category per Fiscal Period	Average Household Spend on a Category per Fiscal Period	Sales Retail Delta	Sales Retail Delta (in Percent)
YOGURT	Premium Segment	\$2698036.6	\$3691684.9	\$993648.3	26.9%
YOGURT	Uncommitted Segment	\$5490188.6	\$3691684.9	(\$1798503.7)	-48.7%
	Standard Segment	\$6467217.0	\$3691684.9	(\$2775532.1)	-75.2%
YOGURT	Potential Segment	\$8192519.9	\$3691684.9	(\$4500835.0)	-121.9%
YOGURT					-129.2%
	Premium Segment	\$5760528.6	\$2513200.8	(\$3247327.8)	-129.2%

You can compare where the retailer is performing better by comparing the average sales retail spend per <configurable time period>.

Field Name	Description
Segment	The segments for the selected scenario.
Category	The top identified categories in the preprocessing.
Average spend on a category per <configurable time period&gt;</configurable 	The average amount spent for a segment.
Average household spend on a category per <configurable period="" time=""></configurable>	The average household amount spent for a segment.
Sales retail delta	The difference in sales retail between retailer and market data.
Sales retail delta as a percent	The percentage difference in sales retail between retailer and market data.

Table 5-27 Opportunity Analysis

The color indicators listed in the following table help you see if the difference in sales retail is above or below a certain threshold or within an acceptable range. This grid is sorted with the sales retail difference as negative or highlighted as red, so that you can review the values below threshold first.

Color	Value
Red	X percent below
Green	Y percent above
Yellow	In between X below and Y above



This grid provides a filter for customer segment and category, so that you can review the category for each segment or vice versa.

## Summary

This lists the criteria you initially selected to define the segment.

#### Figure 5-34 Summary

Summary				
Name	RFM and Customer Behavior	Segment By	RFM and Customer Behavior	
Merchandise	Product Hierarchy CMP 0 - CHAIN	Location	Location Hierarchy COMPANY 0 - CHAIN	
Planning Period	Winter Jan 16			

#### Table 5-28 Summary

Field Name	Description
Name	The name you provided for the segment in the Segment Criteria stage.
Segment by	A predefined group of attributes that include Customer Demographics, RFM and Customer Behavior, Category Purchase Driven. These criteria types are sets of attributes. For example, customer demographics are the properties of a customer. These properties can include ethnicity, income, and age.
Merchandise	The merchandise level and nodes for the segment.
Location	The location level and nodes for the segment.
Fiscal period	The time period for the segment.
Merchandise hierarchy type	This provides details about which type of hierarchy the segment criteria have been created for.

## Cross Segment Spend and Margin Analysis BI

This BI compares how segments vary by Gross Margin% (x axis), Average Amount Spent <per configuration period> (y axis), and Total Sales Retail (z axis) for the customer segment. This can help you understand which segments are underperforming and have the potential for growth. The segments in the middle of the chart are the segments that have growth potential, as compared to the premium segments to the top right.

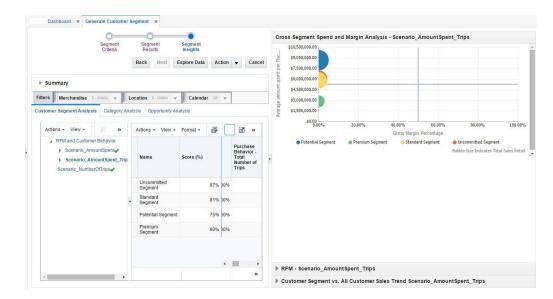


Figure 5-35 Cross Segment Spend Analysis

## **RFM Analysis BI**

This BI provides analysis of segments based on frequency and amount spent. The more frequent customers tend to have a significantly better response and average spend than those who have shopped less recently or less frequently. This indicates customers that are high spender and frequent shoppers are premium segments, vs. low spender and infrequent shopper are uncommitted customers. Figure 5-36 shows how the premium customer segment is in the top right corner, the potential customer segments are close to the center, and the uncommitted shoppers are in the bottom left quadrant. This helps in planning how potential and uncommitted customers can be attracted by certain offers and how existing committed customers can be satisfied.

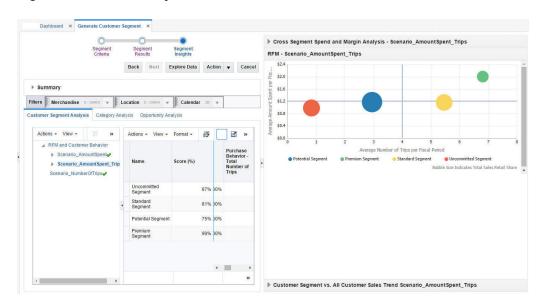


Figure 5-36 RFM Analysis



## Customer Segment vs. All Customer Sales Trends BI

This BI shows a customer segment's sales trends by comparing Average Sales Retail per Segment vs. Average Sales Retail for all customers for the selected criteria time period. You can then see if sales retail has decreased for a specific customer segment and for which customer segment it has remained consistent for the defined quarters. This can help you determine if certain customers are migrating from one customer segment to another over the time period. Figure 5-37 shows how, for each segment, sales increased in 2011 February and the average sales of entire customer base, compared to the segments created.

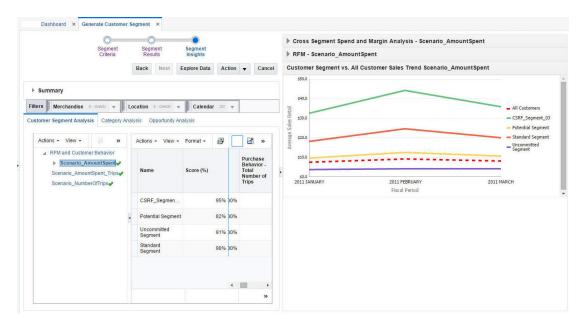


Figure 5-37 Customer Segment vs. All Customer Sales Trends

## Customer Attribute Analysis BI

Customer attributes are analyzed and compared to identify the most prominent selling attributes within a segment. This indicates how the customer attributes are correlated and what each attribute in the specified segment contributes to sales. You can make inferences about which attributes in the segment contribute to significant sales and the potential attributes that should be considered for assortment planning in order to improve sales even more. This chart also provides you with the option to see the number of customers in each segment instead of total sales retail, thus providing insights about how many customers with certain attributes and attribute values are present in certain segments. Figure 5-38 shows how customers with high income and high loyalty score contribute to most of the sales in the segment.



Segn Crite		Segment Results	Segment Insights			CI		bute ana	e Analysis lysis for Premi al Sales Retail						
		Back Next E	Explore Data A	ction	▼ Can				alty Score - Hig						
Summary							14.00%								
Filters Merchandise 0-CHAN	v Lo	cation 0-CHAIN w	Calendar 20	t v	1		10.00%								
Customer Segment Analysis Cal	egory Anal	ysis Opportunity An	alysis				12.00% 10.00% 0.00% 4.00%						•		_
Actions - View -	»	Actions + View +	Format -		2 ×		8 2.00% 0.00%		)	•					
<ul> <li>RFM and Customer Behav</li> <li>Scenario_AmountSpe</li> <li>Scenario_AmountSpe</li> <li>Potential Segment</li> </ul>	nt🥜	Name	Score (%)		Purchase Behavior - Total Number of Trips	3	-2.00% - -2.00 • High • \$60.9 • >2501	- \$121.4	0.00% Low \$121.4 >30k-50	2.00% \$181.9 k	4.00% Sales Retail Contr Medium greater than \$181.9 >50k-70k	Very High		10.00% less than \$60.9 >150k-250k >90k-150k	12.0
Premium Segment Standard Segment		Uncommitted Segment	879	6 20%	5								Bubble Size	e Indicates Total Si	les Re
Uncommitted Segmen Scenario_NumberOffrips	4	Standard Segment	819	6 20%	i i										
occurrence and a second point of the second se		Potential Segment	759	6 20%	i i										
		Premium Segment	909	6 20%	5										
				4	, <b>"</b> ,										

Figure 5-38 Customer Attribute Analysis

The following properties are displayed by the graph. Note that the customer attributes are only displayed when they are configured as part of the Cluster by process.

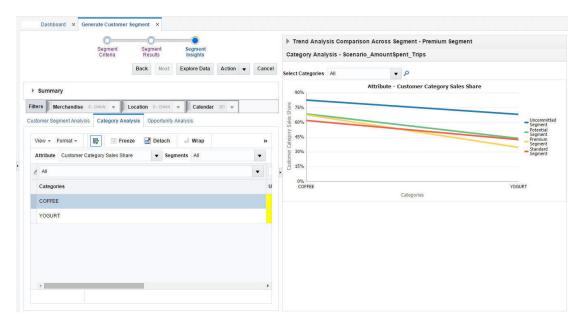
Axis	Description
<i>x</i> -axis	Sales Retail \$ contribution, calculated using the sales revenue share of each attribute in the segment with respect to the total segment sales revenue.
<i>y</i> -axis	Sales Unit \$ contribution, calculated using the sales unit share of each attribute in the segment with respect to the total segment sales units
z-axis	Total Sales Retail \$ or number of customers of each attribute in the selected segment, indicating, via the bubble, the magnitude of the sales contribution.

Table 5-29 Properties

## Category Analysis BI

You can perform category/segment analysis by comparing categories using a selected attribute (such as category sales share, category promotion sales share, average amount spent per month, or number of trips). This can indicate the segments and categories that customers are shopping frequently.





#### Figure 5-39 Category Analysis

## Trend Category Analysis BI

This BI compares sales for selected categories in a segment. You can compare sales by <Configurable Period (Period or Quarter)> to view trends for each category. You can limit the number of categories by selecting a subset of the categories in the drop-down list. You can use this information to plan certain categories for certain seasons by comparing sales with previous periods or by modifying a category plan that is underperforming for a segment in a certain season. The time period displayed is driven by the selection you make in the Segment Criteria. If you select a source time period to include two years' worth of data then you will also see the data for the previous year.



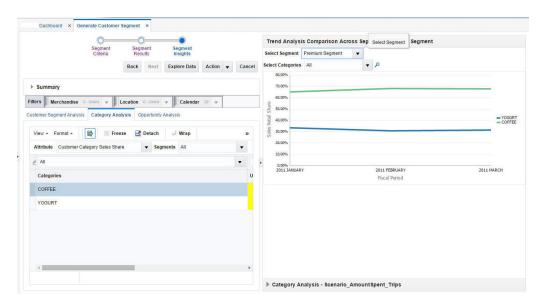


Figure 5-40 Trend Category Analysis



# 6 Attribute Extraction

This chapter describes the Attribute Extraction Cloud Service module.

# Introduction

Attribute Extraction (AE) is an enterprise-specific solution that uses machine learning to extract product attributes from free-form product description strings.

The application's embedded science and automation helps you to extract the attributes (such as brand, color, flavor, and so on) of each product in a particular category and to normalize the attribute values by correcting short forms, misspellings, and other inconsistencies. The product attributes can be used by Demand Transference, Customer Decision Trees, Advanced Clustering, and other retail applications that require product attributes in a structured format.

The AE Cloud Service module consists of the following tabs: Overview, Edit Labels, Annotation, Errors, Normalization, and Results. You use the Overview tab to select one of the previously added product categories or to add a new category. You use the Edit Labels to define category-specific attributes that you want to extract. In the Annotation and Errors tabs, you follow an iterative process to extract attributes and correct any mislabeled attributes. In the Normalization tab, you can use the embedded List of Values (LOV) or create your own LOV to standardize the attribute values. You use the Results tab to review and export the table of attributes.

# **Overview Tab**

The Overview tab displays general information about the product categories previously added by you and other users. You can view this information to determine which user has created each category, when it was last updated, and whether or not the attribute extraction process is complete.

To use the attribute extraction process, you can either select one of the existing categories or you can add a new category. Note that only one copy of each category can exist at any time.

To add a new category, click the **Add** icon. In the pop-up screen, select a category from the list and enter a description. Then click **OK** to return to the Overview tab.

To select a category and start the attribute extraction process, simply click on its name in the overview table.

The AE overview tab is shown in Figure 6-1.



Figure 6-1 Attribute Extraction Overview Tab

1111-111-11-11-11-11-11-11-11-11-11-11-								
6				1	8 ·		a	
el Calegory	Unari Description	Set Court	Control By	Mart Date	Last sydechid By	Last Update	Current Unet	Process Complement
New country line, from	401		ti meet	1050318	anament .	1000010	(area	100

# **Edit Labels Tab**

The Edit Labels tab is used to define category-specific attributes and their labels for the selected category. Defining attributes and labels is the first step in the attribute extraction process. You can return to this tab at any time to add, remove, or modify the attributes.

On the right-hand side of the tab, you can view the description strings of the products in the selected category as well as three levels of hierarchy for the products. The hierarchy that is shown in the Attribute Extraction tables is based on the product hierarchy data that was loaded for the AE application. (See the Implementation Guide for further information about the hierarchy.) To add an attribute, click the **Add** icon. In the pop-up screen, enter the attribute name and attribute label and select a color. The attribute label must be a single character (the characters "o" or "O" are not permitted) and must be unique for each attribute.

2341 - Yagurt. Colline and taken for t	te seeded category								180
+ Attribute Table			+ Descri	ption String					360
Actors + tes + 🔸 X 😤	S .		Ves +	▼ 50					4 N0
e.			1						376
ATTRACT	· · Later	tour		HALLING.	HH.14.5	mar, 540, 1	Description	Description Largh	
Parent .		and the second second	4170	CHAN-1-DK	2011-2-001	contried - Yuguri	ALFRO BERAFON	-	
Warm	. v.	-	4170	CHAR-S-DK	0011-2-268	Withd - Yeper	ALFRO CHERRY 6	28	8
trang			4170	CH89-1-CH	08PT-2-08P	0012385 - Yepet	Ages Filter Steps Apr.	21	
			41704	Dian-1-Dr.	0897-2-068	: 00125et - Yuget	ALFROPERCHEE.	.0	
			4170	OWN-A-DE	0641-2-D64	constant - Yapari	ALPRO 80YX 840		
							ALFRO YOFU RAS		

Figure 6-2 Edit Labels Tab

The attributes, labels, and colors that you define in the Edit Labels tab are displayed on the right-hand side of all other screens for your reference.



### Figure 6-3 Attribute Definitions

E	Attrover 6	Atraction
	1.Edit Labert	1
	2 Annotation	
	3 Errors	
	4 Normalizat	ion.
	5 Results	
	# Attribute (	Vefinitions
	Attribute	Label
1	Brand	- 12
	Brand Flavor	
•		
	Pavor	8

# Annotation Tab

The Annotation tab is used to assign labels to a single token (referred to as a unigraph) or combination of two adjacent tokens (referred to as a digraph). A token is defined as an alphabetic or numeric sequence of characters in a description string. For example, the string "ABC vanilla yogurt 500gr" is a description that consists of the following five tokens (or unigraphs): "ABC", "vanilla", "yogurt", "500"and "gr". At the same time, it consists of the following digraphs: "ABC vanilla", "vanilla yogurt", "yogurt 500gr".

The Annotation tab provides two screens to annotate unigraphs and digraphs.

# Unigraphs

In the Unigraph screen in Annotation tab, you can assign attribute labels to tokens, run the machine learning algorithm to find new attribute labels, and review and approve machine-recommended labels.

## Assigning User Labels and Reviewing Machine Labels

On the top left of Unigraph screen, you see the Annotation section that contains a table listing all tokens along with the following fields:

Field	Description
Frequency	The number of times the token appears across all product description strings
User Label	The label you have assigned to the token
Machine Label	The label recommended by the machine learning algorithm
Approved	A check box used to approve and apply the machine label to the token
New Discovery	A Yes/No flag that indicates whether or not the machine-recommended label is a new discovery from the most recent run

#### Table 6-1 Annotation Fields

In the Annotation section, shown in Figure 6-4, you can perform one of the following tasks for each token:



Task	Description
Change/assign the user label	Select a value from the drop-down menu to change the label or assign a label to a token. (Values in the drop-down menu are the attribute labels that you defined in the Edit Labels tab.) The user label is applied to all instances of the token across all product description strings.
Approve a machine label	Check the Approve check box to assign the machine- recommended value to a token. Once you check the box, the token with the approved machine label is moved from the top tables to the bottom table (the Approved Values section).

Table 0-2 Annotation Section Tasks	Table 6-2	Annotation	Section	Tasks
------------------------------------	-----------	------------	---------	-------

#### Figure 6-4 Annotation Tab with Label Tokens in Unigraph Screen

00-beet inside th			and agreem for \$	Autore Labers								Ng han bilan				E	· Andrea La	-
and Spat																	E Annangiani I Emarg	1
+ Annangian								· Description									a farmalisation 5 Ferraria	
Allen + Ver + 12	<b>T</b> 10							Adam v New	- 22	in Anty	1.81						1000	
e								1									+ Aprilupe Te	-
Takey .	Improve		thertaket	Machine	Approval	Now Description		Product 18	-	Her,114,2	Ter.(14.)	<b>Analytes</b>	1.000		Description Longit		and in F	-
Dankery		-	• =	1			-	4710	Opplin-1-Dr.	18PT-2-18P	-	ALRO RIGARD 6		14		-	Part 1	
M6'		- 18				- 16						NUM.					TRACK C	
14			T. 171.			- 14			Dale 1-DI	0071-0-187	sector repo	VALUE AND		(4)	-		* sand	-
Carler .		*	1.8			. ~	÷	4/746	(restr-1-(re	1011-2-102	101246 . Tope	LAULAU VOLUTING	+					
· Approval Talues							•	+1701	Daniti-1-De	0891-2-089	101200 - Tright	NOTE THE	+		17			
Max + 7 2								176	Dellin 1 Dr.	0097-2-389	-	A Loftmatt						
taken No Selan In Anglian	freed		the Label	Machine Later	Approval	Bear Decomp		1779	0+80-1-01	1071-2-069	-	States -	*	-				
								-								. *		

The Approved Values section on the bottom left displays the tokens that you have approved so far. You can uncheck the Approve check box in this section to remove the approved machine label and move the token back to the top table.

The Description String section on the right side of the Unigraph screen displays all description strings that contain a token selected on the left, along with the length of the strings and position of the selected token in the string, as well as the product hierarchy. The Label column is populated based on the user label or approved machine label for the token. All labeled tokens are colored based on the colors you assigned in the Edit Labels tab. The token selected on the left (in the Annotation section) is shown using a bold font.

You can perform one of the following tasks in the Description Strings section:

Table 6-3	Description Strings Section Tasks
-----------	-----------------------------------

Task	Description							
Change or remove the label for one instance of the	Use the inline drop-down menu in the label column to change or remove the label of the token in a particular description string.							
selected token	Alternatively, right click on any token and use the first option in the menu (Annotate this as) to assign a label to a particular instance. Use the third option in the menu (Remove Annotation - > Remove this label) to remove the label for a particular instance							



Task	Description
Change or remove the label for multiple instances of any of the tokens	Select multiple rows using the Ctrl or Shift keys. Then, change the label using the drop-down list at the top of the table and click <b>Apply</b> . To remove the label for multiple rows, change the label to NULL by selecting the first option in the drop-down list at the top of the table. Alternatively, to change or remove the label for ALL instances of a token, right click on any token and use the second option in the menu (Annotate all as) to assign a label to all instances, or use the third option in the menu (Remove Annotation -> Remove all labels) to remove the label for all instances. Example: if you wish to change the label of a token for all products that belong to a certain department, you can first filter the hierarchy columns based on department. Then, select all of the rows using the Shift key and change the label for all selected rows using the drop-down list at the top of table and click <b>Apply</b> .

 Table 6-3
 (Cont.) Description Strings Section Tasks

#### Figure 6-5 Description Strings Tasks

The Party Courses and	timitan nin		-								Aprillar	(i) <b>4</b>	<del>nin</del> )		•	e o	A BURNESS CALL	1
- Annalation								- Descript	ton String								5 Revenue	
1000 1 2 2 T	18							Adams v	20 12 1	(i) Ann (1	3.8						-	
( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( )								1 mars										
1.mar	Traperty .	-	-	Later	Approval	Bacavery		and the second second	100,247	MONT	100,04,3	heren	1.000	Langth	Pennen			1.
Martin .			18			1.00	2		a (man-1-(m	(671-2-087	III Cirl-Nart	CONTRACTIONS FOR SHE	10			2	These	
405			14			- 10		-		1011-2-087	inches made	Live for traint	18				-	-
14	2		3			1.00			N. Dage - 1- (14.			BEINGOL AND PREEPONEST PREPONEST	18	1			-	
Cycle		-	10								daugt	-						
(ten)		•	17			- 14			19 53489-1-534	1001-2-001	-							
									ti immodutio	1871-0-DBP	Raines Incode	AND	18					
- Approval Values								-	11 James - 1 - 124	001-2-001	10295-044	NAME AND ADDRESS OF	1.18	1				
mr 7 2						1000			to Dame i Da	007-2-007	HOR NA	NUMBER						
Table Table Table	Lagarita			Libe	Auguran .	increase of			11 (maps-1-121		-	17.481						

## **Finding New Values**

Once you assigned labels to some of the tokens in Unigraph screen, you may use the New Values button to run the machine learning algorithm that finds new attributes and recommends labels based on the labels that you have assigned and approved so far. Alternatively, you may go to the Digraph screen and label some digraphs before running the algorithm. Note that assigning and approving unigraph and digraph labels and running the algorithm to find new values is an iterative process; you can repeat these two steps as frequently as you want until you are satisfied with the quality of the results and number of attributes extracted. If the machine learning algorithm does not find enough new values, it is an indication that it requires more information to discover the patterns and be able to recommend new values, and you might want to label some more unigraphs and digraphs before re-running the algorithm.

To run the machine learning algorithm, first select a mode from the drop-down menu next to the New Values button on the top right. You can select from the following three modes:



Mode	Description
Random	Randomly partitions the data into a training set and a test set to be used by machine learning algorithm.
By attribute	If you select this mode, you will be prompted to select one attribute. The data is then partitioned in such way that all description strings that have one or more tokens labeled as the selected attribute are used as the training set. The remaining descriptions strings are used as test set.
By annotation	The description strings that are 80% labeled are used as training set. The remaining descriptions strings are used as test set.

#### Table 6-4 Machine Learning Algorithm Modes

The By Attribute mode is most effective in the early stages, where very few attribute values have been identified.

Note that after you click the New Values button, it may take few seconds for the machine learning algorithm to run and find new attributes. Then a pop-up message shows how many new values were found. The Machine Label and New Discovery columns in the Annotation section on the top left will be populated to show the new labels and indicate which tokens were labeled by the machine in the most recent run.

## Digraphs

The Digraph is used for labeling two adjacent tokens (as opposed to a single token) with the same attribute. The Digraph screen consists of an Annotation section on the top left for labeling digraphs, an Approved Values section on the bottom left, and a Description String section on the right for labeling individual instances of a digraph.

## Assigning User Labels to Digraphs

On the top left of Digraph screen, you see the Annotation section that contains a table listing all combinations of adjacent tokens (labeled as "token1" and "token2") where exactly one of the two tokens has been labeled and the other token has no label assigned or approved. The token that already has a label is shown using a bold font.

Other fields in this section are as follows:

Field	Description
Frequency	The number of times that the two tokens are adjacent to one another across all product description strings.
Label	The label you have assigned to or approved for one of the tokens. (The token that is shown in bold font already has this label.)
Approved	A check box used to approve and apply the label of labeled token to the unlabeled token.

#### Table 6-5 Diagraph Fields

If you think the two tokens are of the same attribute type indicated by the label, check the Approved check box to apply the label to both tokens. Once you check the box, the



approved row is moved from the top table to the bottom table (the Approved Values section).

The Approved Values section on the bottom left displays the adjacent tokens that you have approved so far. You can uncheck the approve check box in this section to remove the approved row and return it to the top table.

The Description String section on the right side of the Digraph screen displays all description strings that contain the adjacent tokens selected on the left, as well as the product hierarchy. All labeled tokens are colored based on the colors you assigned in the Edit Labels tab. The two tokens selected on the left (in the Annotation section) are shown using a bold font.

You can do one of the following in the Description Strings section:

Table 6-6 Description Strings Section Tasks

Task	Description
Remove the label of the originally unlabeled token for one instance	If you believe the combination of two tokens must not be labeled the same in one or few description strings, un-check the Approved check box to remove the label for the token that was not originally labeled. Note that the token that was originally labeled (i.e., the token displayed in bold font in the Annotation section on the left) remains as labeled and is not affected.
Change or remove the label for one or all instances of any of the tokens	As with the Unigraph screen, you can use the right click menu on any token and use the Annotate this as option to assign a label to a particular instance or use the Annotate all as option to assign a label to all instances of the token. To remove the label for a particular instance or all instances of the token, use Remove annotation -> Remove this label and Remove annotation -> Remove all labels.

#### Figure 6-6 Annotation Tab Diagraph Screen

Hand Real		the latent and the	rise for Harrison Labolity						3.0	and the second second	••	8	2 adolesis (s 10-s) alain 2 Assessments 3 Cours	i
- Annalysis						- 244	argine breg						d formalisate E Resulto	4
184 T	2					-	1 2						a section by	1.
See 1	Sant 3	Angenty	tant l	Approval		1								-
	. Ben	4			-	Robert W	80.345	100,343	101.14.2	Section .	-			
é :	114	10	8	0			68 Grei-1 ->.	0076-1-007	10 STM head	NO DESCRIPTION	1		Part	
	20		*	12		- 60	1 Degr. + Dr.	007-2-001	including of	available and a second	13		telene .	
	İseeet	10		.0.										63
	144	+		12										
	-			0										
theodorty.	144	10	*	<b>D</b> .										
theadarch .		-		25										
					-									
< Approved 1														
184 F T	2													
Taxe 1	(team)	Treasury	Lev	Approach.										

# **Errors Tab**

The Errors tab is used to review the instances where the current attribute type assigned to a token is different from the attribute type recommended by the machine. You can review these potential user errors and fix them if needed. For each instance, you can take one of the following actions:

Action	Description
Approve the Recommended Label	Check the Approved check box to approve the Recommended Label. The approved instance will be moved from the top table to the bottom table. You can use the check box in the bottom table to undo the approval.
Change the Current Label	If neither the Current Label nor the Recommended Label is correct, use the drop-down list to change the Current Label. Do not check the Approved check box in this case. If the Current Label is correct, no action is needed.

#### Table 6-7 Error Tab Actions

It is recommended that you review the errors after you complete the annotation step and extract the attributes. However, you can navigate to the Error tab at any time to review the errors and change or approve the labels for some or all instances.

#### Figure 6-7 Errors Tab

	t. Desclatoria a	tan patanpa da	i oggeske kadere i	alen.		<b>W</b> Decision	- 8-	Part		۰.	1 de la como	
		-	100	an spin		-	H	1			1 Parata 1 Parata 1 Parata 1 Parata	
10 10 10 10	12 (1000-1-2)) 13 (1000-1-2) 13 (1000-1-2) 14 (1000-1-2)	0014-0-005 0014-0-005 0014-0-005	011241-1444 011241-1444 012241-1444 012241-1444	- 449 - 644 - 649	Providence Providence		<ul> <li>a</li> <li>a</li> <li>a</li> <li>a</li> <li>a</li> <li>a</li> <li>a</li> <li>a</li> </ul>		- Andrew			
	2 mar.(14,1	nid.	86343	la casa	-	1	. 32	- 11		 •		

# Normalization Tab

After you extract the attributes, you can use the Normalization tab to correct misspellings, sort forms, and other inconsistencies in the attribute values to makes sure that each attribute value is displayed in a consistent form across all product descriptions. For example, strawberry is a flavor that may appear in many different forms such as "sberry", "strawb", and ""strberry" across description strings. The purpose of using the Normalization screen is to convert all these different forms to the correct form (i.e., strawberry).

To run the spell-correcting algorithm, you can use one of the pre-defined List of Values (Global LOVs) or you can create your own LOV (Run LOVs) specific to one attribute. To use either of the LOVS, click the List of Values button on the top right.

To select a Global LOV, check the Active check box next to it. There are two Global LOVs: flavor (list of all different flavors) and general (a comprehensive list of English words). You can click the row for each LOV to see all the values in the list. If you select the flavor LOV, it will only be used to correct the values of the flavor attribute. If you select the general LOV, it will be used for correcting the values of all attribute types.



All Destinants - N. Deservices All States - N					
	List of Values (LOVs)			•	 2 27
DH. Next: Anti-remained value for the trian	Contractions Rule Libra			_	G 18
n Normalized Tokara	Available Disbal LOVs Merupi to provide UD Or low out to conscious	2	+ Volues for FLAVOR		31 48
	Altera + Vani + 🧭 😰 😫		Actors = View = 🦉 😰 🖻		14
Taken Macmutant Taken	/ Name	Attes	2. Vilue	Postal Print	 - 12
Add to Braziley	KAOK	O	abuelita		
	00404		acid ementation enteriony explore action action enterione enterion		15221
· Approved Normalized Toxees				_	-
🕑 2				_	-
Takan Marmulant Takan					-
- Martin Barra					
	X.				

#### Figure 6-8 Normalization Tab with Global List of Values

To create a new Run LOV or select an existing Run LOV, navigate to the RUN LOVs tab in the pop-up screen. To create a new list, click the Add button on the left table (Available Run LOVs). Then select the attribute that you want to create the list for and assign a name to the LOV. You can also pre-populate the list with tokens that are labeled as the selected attribute and appear more than a certain number of times across all description strings. The reason for this option is that usually the tokens with high frequency have the correct form and spelling. For example, there may be few instances of "sberry" and "strawb", but most certainly there are many instances of "strawberry". So the high frequency tokens are likely to have the correct form and can be used by the spell correcting algorithm.

After you create a Run LOV, you can edit or remove the values in the list or add new values. To edit or remove values, select a row in the right table and use the Edit or Delete button. To add a new value, click the Add button on the top of table on the right.

In addition to adding a new value to the list (to be used by the spelling correction algorithm), you can define a value/token pair so that all instances of the token across all description strings are replaced by the defined value. This is a useful option when the data has lots of abbreviations and short forms that may be difficult to correct using a spelling correction algorithm. For example if the name "Hello Kitty" is a brand that appears as "HK" in many of the description strings, then you can define a pair as "Hello Kitty|HK" to have all instances of "HK" replace by "Hello Kitty". (Note that the correct value and the token must be separated by a pipe delimiter (])).

Once you are done adding the Run LOV and editing the values, make sure to check the Active check box on the left table to select the list.

	List of Values (LOVs)				0	
pet. Appy constant serves for the bo-	Office LOTA Res LOVA					
ulued Tokens	<ul> <li>Available Run LOVs</li> <li>Crute and manage the List Of Values contected to the in</li> </ul>		# Values for Flavor		1	
1 if	Actura = Van = 🔶 🗶 😰 🔯		Actors - Van - + / X 2 14	8 8		
	1		1		Taken .	
Normation Token	Rate	Active	Vatur	Takes	Position	Augross
	my transition		Activity			
			Comer			
			Multer			
			Multeright			
oved Normalized Tokens						
8 8						
Normalized Tables						
Page 1	1					
				0	6	

Figure 6-9 Normalization Tab with Run List of Values

After you select a Global or Run LOV, click the OK button to close the pop-up screen and return to the Normalization tab. You can see the active LOVs on the bottom right of the screen.

To run the spell correcting algorithm, click the Normalize button. It may take few seconds for the algorithm to run. When the run is complete, the recommended corrections are displayed in the Normalized Tokens table on the top left. This table has the following fields:

Table 6-8	Normalized	Tokens
-----------	------------	--------

Field	Description
Token	The token identified by the algorithm as misspelled.
Normalized token	The recommended correct value for the token or the value that you defined for replacement (i.e., the value/token pair).
Frequency	The number of times the token appears across all product description strings.
Approved	A check box used to approve and apply the recommended correct value.

You can perform one of the following in Normalization tab:

Table 6-9 Normalization Tab Tasks

Task	Description			
Edit the normalized token	If you do not agree with the recommended correction and want to edit the normalized token, you can edit the text in the Normalized Token column before approving it.			



Task	Description				
Approve/reject the normalized token for all instances	Check the Approved check box to replace all instances of the token with a normalized token. The approved rows will be moved from top table to the bottom table (Approved Normalized Tokens). To undo the approval, uncheck the check box in the bottom table.				
Approve/reject the normalized token for one instance	When you click on a row in the Normalized Token table, all descriptions that contain the selected token will be displayed in the description strings table on the right. You can approve or reject individual instances of the normalization by checking or un-checking the Approved check box in the right table.				
Clear all recommended corrections	To clear all recommended normalized tokens, click the Reset button on top of the Normalized Tokens table on the top left.				
Refresh	It is recommended that you click the Refresh button on the top right after you make changes to a LOV or select/deselect a LOV.				

Table 6-9 (Cont.) Normalization Tab Tasks

# **Results Tab**

The Results tab is used to view the table of attributes. You can export the results into a spreadsheet. You can click the Complete button on the top right to change the status of the category in the overview tab to a value of "complete". This indicates that the attribute extraction process for this category is complete. Other users who log in to the application may decide to work on incomplete categories.

Figure 6-10	Results Tab
-------------	-------------

- Product Amile	utes								1 Aventure 1 Errors
Autors o trans-	6 2								4 hometers
Product External Ray	Product External Com	Probel Description	Brend	Farm	Pault vise	- · Ind of Bassets	Witness	famacied Description	5 firmatio
1012141-01028	101101008	years the three any in Parcel + The	Muter		**			1424-14.5	2
8912340100534	10104475	A Phillips M Carlsgord on Artig	-		66		100	4444004	
81234110108	Annual a	JPC Barriel N. Carringue Drive Arribly			**		100	44.00%	
8012340100000	TERMONT	MILLERCIPHT HARLANDONEE INV	MALERIANT	VANLA.				MALER THE	
anglehoog.	10002079	HALLENGER PROF YOURT AND	MALEN. PHY	Heart.				WOLLBROOM PRO	
ad-bierromet.	103041447	WALDLART CHEERCARE YOU IPV	MALERCEP?					WALERLINT &	
antranerat.	10110200	MALLENLAWT CHOCOLATE YOU GIVE	HALENLEY!					HALENJA-T 4	
012411011	102121100	HILLER HAT CTIVE YOUNT MY	WALLING MINT					MULDIVER'S	
0012540105244	102294375	Multiply and a Table Agentical	outpergree	terrie :				Interesting to Service B	
0012340101284	1012PADER	Munergen final Pruse lips	autoright.					Manager 6	
-		Autompti fance Poeld topot tak	silange		*			manged	
101234010108	10101047	would shut that college ers.	WALLER COMMER	18,17				HALER PAINTED.	
pinkiensinst.	181142218	which and the result consideration	WULLEN COMMEN	(mijet				WALLER PRUT DD.	
012340100102		MALLER CORNER RECTRUIT EXTERS	WALLER COMPR	mat			-	MALER CORNER	
WILTHPOTON	Inclusion and	HEALEN COMMENT PROOF TO ANY	HELER CONSER	WALT .				HILLER CORNER	

# Status

The Status screen is accessible from every tab. To open, click the pie chart button on the top right.



In the Status screen, you can see the progress of the attribute extraction process. It displays different statistics, including total number of tokens, number of distinct tokens, and number of labeled tokens.

You can also see the breakdown of labeled tokens by attribute type. To see the list of all distinct values for a certain attribute, click the respective section of the attribute in any of the pie charts.



#### Figure 6-11 Status Screen



# 7 Affinity Analysis

This chapter describes the use of the Affinity Analysis (AA) Cloud Service module.

# Introduction

Market basket analysis involves the use of data mining techniques to search for sales patterns between products within a given group of transactions. The output of that analysis provides a rule that defines the association found between products at the subclass or class level of the merchandise hierarchy.

A rule consists of one to three antecedents (IF attributes) and a single consequent (THEN attribute). For example:

IF (milk) and (juice), THEN (cereal)

In other words, if a customer purchases an item from the subclasses milk and juice, the customer will also purchase an item from subclass cereal. After a rule is defined, a user can use the AA interface to understand how strong the affinity is, using rule confidence and support. The probability that a customer will buy milk, juice, and cereal is known as the *support percentage*, while the conditional probability that they will buy cereal when they buy milk and juice is known as *confidence*. Rules with a very high support value occur frequently in your transaction history, while rules with a high confidence value represent a strong affinity between products.

After users have identified selling patterns, they can begin to take action based on those patterns, as well as the needs and goals of their product category. Suppose that a merchant is tasked with bringing in more margin dollars to the cereal category. Using the affinity rule in the preceding example, the merchant might work with the dairy category on a milk promotion to increase sales of milk. This in turn increases the sales of cereal, without sacrificing margin dollars on a cereal promotion. Note that this can require cross-category planning in some cases, as product affinities can sometimes occur between seemingly unrelated products (such as pet food and beer).

Another component of market basket analysis relates to the product assortments being sold in stores. Using product affinities and sales history, AA provides assortment recommendations that improve the revenue or margin of a category by suggesting product additions or removals. Products may be recommended for removal if they are found to be too similar to other products in the assortment (and thus cannibalize the sales of those products). Conversely, products that are not similar to any other items in the assortment may be candidates for inclusion, as they will not divert sales from the existing assortment.

Market basket rules are used to improve the assortment recommendation by showing the potential lift (or halo effect) on your overall sales due to any known affinities on recommended item additions. For example, if AA is analyzing an assortment for Coffee, and a particular item is part of a market basket rule that drive sales for Milk, then that item has a greater potential value for the lift it brings to the Milk category. AA may then recommend that item over other items in the category, because including it will bring in additional revenue to other assortments without changing those assortments directly.



# **User Interface**

The AA user interface consists of several screens that help the user analyze and take action on the results of the market basket analysis and assortment recommendation processes. The following list summarizes the main purpose of each screen:

- Assortment Recommender Review the product assortment recommendations made by AA, including the expected halo effects from items in the optimized assortment.
- Top N Class Affinities Review the market basket affinity rules identified by AA between different product classes, including insights around the frequency and profitability of the top rules.
- Top N Subclass Affinities Review the market basket affinity rules identified by AA between different product subclasses, including insights around the frequency and profitability of the top rules.
- Top N Promotion Affinities Review the market basket affinity rules identified by AA between different product subclasses under the effects of a promotion, which can be used to identify the effects promoting a category has on other nonpromoted products.
- Top N Customer Segment Affinities Review the market basket affinity rules identified by AA between different product subclasses under the effects of a promotion and separated by customer segment, which provides insights into the top promoted product affinities for a targeted group of customers.

The way that you interact with the AA user interface depends on your business role and which insights you want to take action on. For example, a category planner looking to make changes to their assortment to increase margin dollars might start from the Assortment Rec screen. The planner might select the category and one of the top-selling locations, and then review the added or dropped items AA has recommended. From there, the planner can choose to move forward with the recommendations and make the necessary adjustments to the assortment plan or dive deeper into the Product Affinities screens to better understand why certain recommendations are being made.

Regardless of which screen you are examining, a set of global prompts determines the data displayed throughout the application.

On first accessing the application, you make selections from the prompts and click on the **Submit** button, which will load the remaining application screens based on your selections. Modifying and submitting the prompt values after that time will refresh the screens with new data.

Prompt Name	Description
Тор 10 Ву	Select the primary metric used to rank the market basket results in all places where affinity rules are displayed.
Fiscal Week From	Select the starting week from which results must be displayed. The values displayed are the week of the Fiscal Calendar.
То	Select the ending week that results must be displayed for.

## Table 7-1 AA Global Prompts



Prompt Name	Description
Department	Select the department from the merchandise hierarchy that results must be displayed for. All of the classes or subclasses on the THEN side of an affinity rule will be from the selected Department.
Location	Select the location from the location hierarchy that results should be displayed for.

The Top 10 By prompt allows you to select from the following metrics, which are used to determine which affinity rules are displayed and how to sort the results that are shown.

Table 7-2 Top 10 B	y Options
--------------------	-----------

Metric Name	Description
Net Sales	Chooses the top N rules in each screen, based on the net sales retail amount (e.g., Avg Sales from If Items)
Net Quantity	Chooses the top N rules in each screen, based on the net sales quantity (e.g., Avg Sales Quantity from If Items)
Net Profit	Chooses the top N rules in each screen, based on the net sales profit (e.g., Avg Profit from If Items)

Although this prompt indicates "Top 10", you have the ability to select more than 10 results by changing the Top selection in the Market Basket Filters area of the screen, as discussed later in this chapter.

The Fiscal Week From and To prompts allow you to select a range of dates for which the results are returned. Market basket affinity rules may change over time as new sales transactions are processed, so selecting the weeks to review ensures that only the rules that are applicable for that period of time are displayed.

The Department prompt displays a list of departments from the merchandise hierarchy. Selecting a department will limit the data in all screens such that the consequent (or THEN components) of an affinity rule will be from that department.

After all selections are made and the Submit button is clicked, the interface will refresh and display results. Each section of the application is organized under an informational tile that describes the purpose of the screen, along with summarization metrics.

0	Assortment Rec 1	0	Class 0	•	Sub Class 12	•	Promotion 9	<ul> <li>Custome</li> </ul>	r Segment 14	All 35
Coffee	31.51% 23	Profit Share	0%	Profit Share	0.19%	Profit Share	0.049%	Profit Share	1.415%	2/15/18
		Sales Share	0%	Sales Share	0,157%	Sales Share	0.058%	Sales Share	1.030%	

Each tile has the following general properties.



Component	Description
Title	A descriptive name for the data contained below the selected tile.
Primary Metric	A key measure that highlights important data, such as the number of affinity rules available for review for a given set of prompt selections.
Secondary Metrics	Additional measures that describe the underlying data available when clicking on the info tile.

Table 7-3Info Tile Components

Clicking on any info tile's title or primary metric will display the associated data in the lower section of the screen. The data shown in each tile in the application is described in the following Table.

Tile Name	Primary Metric Description	Secondary Metric Description
Assortment Rec	The number of assortment recommendations available for the selected global prompt values.	For the assortments in the department, the percentage the sales amount changed and the amount the sales changed.
Class	The number of class level market basket affinity rules available for the selected global prompt values.	The share of sales profit and sales amount that is represented by all discovered association rules out of the total sales profit and sales amount processed.
Sub Class	The number of subclass level market basket affinity rules available for the selected global prompt values.	The share of sales profit and sales amount that is represented by all discovered association rules out of the total sales profit and sales amount processed.
Promotion	The number of promoted subclass level market basket affinity rules available for the selected global prompt values.	The share of sales profit and sales amount that is represented by all discovered association rules out of the total sales profit and sales amount processed.
Customer Segment	The number of customer segment promoted subclass level market basket affinity rules available for the selected global prompt values.	The share of sales profit and sales amount that is represented by all discovered association rules out of the total sales profit and sales amount processed.
All	The total number of market basket affinity rules available for the selected global prompt values.	The last date that market basket insights were executed on.

Table 7-4 Info Tile Metrics



# Assortment Recommender

The assortment recommender screen provides insights on ways to improve the mix of products in a store assortment, using a combination of data from Demand Transference and Affinity Analysis. This section describes the data shown in the screen, as well as how to use the results to take action within your business. For more information on Demand Transference, refer to Demand Transference.

Figure 7-2 Assortment Recommender

Store 10-1057 Green Bay  SKU/a Added 2 SKU/a Dropped 2			Assortment Amount % Variance Units % Variance	
tem	Description	Rase Sales Units	Halo Sales Units	Base Sales Amount
1234762 - Folgera Breakfast Roast - Caffeinated 12 oz Can	Add	13.041	15.65	\$23.47
1234753 - Folgers Supreme Dark Roast - Caffeinated 12 oz Can	Add	13.12	15.088	\$19.68

The first step in using the assortment recommender screen is to select a store and assortment to review. The stores listed in the drop-down menu are limited to those stores that have completed an assortment recommendation calculation for the selected department in the selected period. The assortment drop-down menu is limited to those assortments with a completed assortment recommendation calculation for the date range, department, and location previously selected, and align with the level of the product hierarchy that assortment-planning operations occur at. For example, if we process Coffee on Week 1, Yogurt on Week 2, and Milk on Week 3, and we pick a date range of Weeks 1-3 in the global prompts, we will show results for those three categories.

After selecting a store and an assortment, the screen displays data showing the systemoptimized product list and the original product list, along with several summary metrics.

Field Name	Description
SKUs Added	The number of SKUs added to the assortment by the optimization process.
SKUs Dropped	The number of SKUs removed from the assortment by the optimization process.
Amount % Variance	The change in sales retail amount for the assortment after SKUs are added and dropped by the optimization, based on average weekly sales.
Units % Variance	The change in sales units for the assortment after SKUs are added and dropped by the optimization, based on average weekly sales.

Table 7-5 Assortment Optimization Summary Metrics

The following table lists the summary metrics that the optimized assortment table displays insights into expected product performance if the recommendations are applied to your assortment.



Field Name	Description
Item	The item number and description of the SKU in the assortment.
Description	The recommended change for a SKU in the assortment. This may either be to keep an existing SKU or add a SKU that was not previously in the assortment.
Base Sales Units	The average weekly sales units of the SKU at the selected location.
Halo Sales Units	The average weekly sales units of the SKU at the selected location, after adjusting for demand as a result of Halo sales due to market basket affinity rules involving the SKU.
Base Sales Amount	The average weekly sales amount of the SKU at the selected location.
Halo Sales Amount	The average weekly sales amount of the SKU at the selected location, after adjusting for demand as a result of Halo sales due to market basket affinity rules involving the SKU.
Base Sales Profit Amount	The average weekly sales profit of the SKU at the selected location.
Halo Sales Profit Amount	The average weekly sales profit of the SKU at the selected location, after adjusting for demand as a result of Halo sales due to market basket affinity rules involving the SKU.
Incremental Demand	The number of sales units of the SKU that do not transfer to any other SKU in the assortment if it were to be deleted from the assortment.
Substitutable Demand	The number of sales units of the SKU that can transfer to other SKUs in the assortment if it were to be deleted from the assortment.

 Table 7-6
 Optimized Assortment Table

The primary purpose of the recommendations is to highlight the optimal mix of products, based on a pre-defined optimization target (which can be sales units, amount, or profit). The optimization process takes into account the product similarities and assortment elasticity (as generated by Demand Transference) to determine which products are candidates for addition or removal from the current assortment. It also uses the market basket affinity rules to identify additional sales generated by the SKUs in the assortment in other product categories. For example, a SKU that belongs to Subclass A, which has a strong affinity with sales of Subclass B, is effectively generating a certain number of additional sales outside of the assortment itself just by being included.

This combination of inputs into the optimization process may result in SKUs being added or dropped from the assortment. A SKU that has been dropped from the assortment may have been found to be too similar to other existing SKUs (thus its removal will transfer the majority of the demand for that SKU to other similar items). A dropped SKU may also have had a low contribution to sales in that assortment, either due to a lack of affinity rules generating additional halo effects, or because other SKUs available for addition provided better results and were swapped in. The system may recommend product additions when it has identified SKUs that will improve the optimization target, such as sales profit. It may also recommend adding a SKU when there are no similar SKUs currently in the assortment, so adding the new SKU will not cannibalize much demand from other items.

If you want to analyze the recommendations further, the system provides pop-up windows displaying Halo and Cannibalization effects relating to the selected item from the Optimized Assortment table. Select a row in the table, and then click the Halo or Cannibalization buttons on the task bar to review the data.

	Detach					
Code	Subclass Name	Parent Ext Code	Parent Name	Halo Amount	Halo Profit Amount	Halo Units
000	Single Serve	10000	Coffee	\$5.51	\$2.76	5.51
000	Whole	10000	Coffee	\$5.49	\$2.75	5.49
000	Instant	10000	Coffee	\$5.49	\$2.74	5.49
00	Instant	10000	Coffee	\$5.49	\$2.74	5.49

Figure 7-3 Halo Effects Pop-Up

Table 7-7 Halo Effects

Field Name	Description
Subclass Ext Code	The numeric identifier for a subclass with a halo effect from the SKU.
Subclass Name	The descriptive name for a subclass with a halo effect from the SKU.
Parent Ext Code	The numeric identifier of the parent class for a subclass.
Parent Name	The descriptive name for the parent class for a subclass.
Halo Amount	The calculated halo effect on the subclass's sales amount.
Halo Profit Amount	The calculated halo effect on the subclass's sales profit.
Halo Units	The calculated halo effect on the subclass's sales units.

The Halo pop-up window provides insights into the secondary effect of a SKU on other products. Products with strong market basket affinities may generate large halo effects and thus be good candidates for your assortment.

When evaluating the additions and removals on your assortment, it can also be helpful to understand cannibalization effects. These effects are based on the product similarities and assortment elasticities obtained from Demand Transference. Products that are very similar to each other tend to split up the customer demand for this kind of product, since the customer is not likely to buy two similar products. Conversely, products that are not very similar will not have as much overlapping demand. The Cannibalization pop-up window provides some of these insights.



# Figure 7-4 Cannibalization Effect Pop-Up

annibilization		e
View 💌 🔛	Detach	
Ext Code	Item Description	Substitutable Units
1234753	1234753 - Folgers Supreme Dark Roast - Caffeinated 12 oz Can	3.77
1234600	1234600 - Maxwell House Colombian De-Caffeinated 12 oz Can	8.05

## Table 7-8 Cannibalization Effects

Field Name	Description
Ext Code	The numeric identifier for a SKU that is cannibalized by the selected assortment SKU.
Item Description	The descriptive value for the SKU.
Substitutable Units	The calculated number of sales units that can be cannibalized from other SKUs when the assortment SKU is added, or the number of units transferred to these SKUs when the assortment SKU is dropped.

At the bottom of the screen, you can also see the original assortment, along with any SKUs from the assortment that have been dropped in the recommendation.

# Figure 7-5 Original Assortment

View * 🗇 📴 🗹 Detach			
tem	Description	Base Sales Units	Halo Sales Units
1234747 - Folgers Colombian - Caffeinated 12 oz Can	Drop	15	15.45
234615 - Maxwell House Breakfast Roast De-Caffeinated 12 oz Can	Drop	10	10.7
234600 - Maxwell House Colombian De-Caffeinated 12 oz Can	Current	21	24.15
1234582 - Folgers Breakfast Roast De-Caffeinated 12 oz Can	Current	5	5.25

Table 7-9	Original	Assortment
-----------	----------	------------

Field Name	Description
Item	The item number and description of the SKU in the assortment.
Description	The recommended change for a SKU in the assortment. This may either be to keep an existing SKU or drop a SKU that was in the assortment.



Field Name	Description
Base Sales Units	The average weekly sales units of the SKU at the selected location.
Halo Sales Units	The average weekly sales units of the SKU at the selected location, after adjusting for demand as a result of Halo sales due to market basket affinity rules involving the SKU.
Base Sales Amount	The average weekly sales amount of the SKU at the selected location.
Halo Sales Amount	The average weekly sales amount of the SKU at the selected location, after adjusting for demand as a result of Halo sales due to market basket affinity rules involving the SKU.
Base Sales Profit Amount	The average weekly sales profit of the SKU at the selected location.
Halo Sales Profit Amount	The average weekly sales profit of the SKU at the selected location, after adjusting for demand as a result of Halo sales due to market basket affinity rules involving the SKU.

Table 7-9 (Cont.) Original Assortment

# Using Assortment Recommender Results

The assortment recommendations provided within AA aim to achieve the maximum possible value for the chosen target sales measure, such as profit or revenue. Assortment planners may use the results of this process while preparing for the next selling season or fiscal period in order to adjust their current assortments based on their business strategy. Planners may choose to accept the recommendations as-is, or choose a subset of changes in order to see how that will affect their financial targets and assortment plan. This modified assortment can then be provided to AA and reprocessed in the future to refine the recommendations.

The following example describes the workflow of an assortment planner (Anne) working to improve sales in the Coffee category.

- Anne starts with the existing assortment of coffee items available in stores, along with current performance measures describing how each item is selling. She knows that certain items are performing poorly and wants to mark them for removal from the assortment. She also has a list of new items that can be added to the assortment. All of this information is provided as inputs to AA prior to performing the optimization process.
- After AA has been provided with the assortments and lists of possible changes that Anne wants to make, the system will schedule and execute the optimization process using predefined business rules (such as the maximum number of items that can be added or dropped by the system).
- 3. Knowing the process executed over the weekend, Anne logs into AA on Monday morning to review the results. She selects a location and her Coffee assortment in the UI prompts, and then begins to analyze the recommendations.
- 4. AA has selected three items in the current assortment to be dropped and another four items that should be added. Anne first looks at the dropped items and compares them to the other items she was thinking about removing. She notes that the dropped items are not the worst-selling ones she had chosen, but AA shows them as contributing very little to halo effects in other areas, so they may have very weak market basket affinities that contribute to their removal.

- 5. Anne next reviews the recommendation for items to add to the assortment. Of the four items that AA has chosen, three of them have significant halo effects driven by the market basket affinities. Anne is not as sure about the last item, so she selects it and clicks on the Cannibalization button. She notes that the item has relatively low substitutable demand from other items, suggesting it is not very similar to anything in her current assortment. This makes it a good candidate for addition, as it can bring in new demand that the assortment may not have today.
- 6. Anne decides to accept all of the recommendations made by AA for this assortment, exports the results to Excel for later reference, and then exits the system to make the necessary changes to her assortment plan.

# Market Basket Analysis

The market basket analysis screens of the application all relate to the market basket affinity rules generated by AA. The tiles and screens provide a way to view different sets of data, depending on the configurations used for your business.

Market basket rules and their associated metrics are a key insight into product demand and customer buying behaviors. Understanding which products are more likely to sell together allow your business to coordinate targeted offers and promotions for products that have strong affinities elsewhere, without having to promote those other categories. It is also possible to understand market basket differences between customer segments, allowing you to further refine your sales and promotion strategies to target specific groups of customers that will bring in the most value to your business.

There are five screens available for viewing the AA results, each containing a different subset of affinity rules with certain characteristics as described below.

Field Name	Description
Class	Displays market basket affinities between different classes, without any consideration for whether the items were on promotion or not.
Subclass	Displays market basket affinities between different subclasses, without any consideration for whether the items were on promotion or not.
Promotion	Displays market basket affinities between different subclasses when the antecedent (if) components are promoted and the consequent (then) components are not promoted.
Customer Segment	Displays market basket affinities between different subclasses when the antecedent (if) components are promoted and the consequent (then) components are not promoted, further separated by customer segments.
All	Displays a searchable list of all available affinity rules for all types.

#### Table 7-10 Market Basket

After you select one of the five info tiles at the top of the screen, you will be presented with additional filter prompts and a data table for displaying results.





Тор	10	•	All	2	Sub Classes	200001 - Healthy Snacks	v	Customer Segments	Value Seekers	v
Sele	ect Product Hierarchy	Sub Clas	▼ Sh	how only A with Pror						

The filters above the table allow you to limit the data displayed in the table. AA can generate a large number of rules, and usually only the most common rules supported by the largest number of sales transactions are used in analyses. Which filters are displayed will depend on the current screen being examined. The following table provides an explanation of how all the filters impact the displayed results.

Filter Name	Description
Тор	Selecting a different number will change how many market basket rules are displayed in the results table.
All	Selecting the check box overrides the Top filter to instead display all available market basket rules.
Classes/Subclasses	Select specific classes or subclasses for which market basket rules should be displayed. This filter will be applied as an OR condition for either the IF components or the THEN components. If there are multiple IF components, then a match is only required for one of the components.
Customer Segments	Select specific customer segments for which market basket rules should be displayed.
Select Product Hierarchy	(All Screen Only) This prompt is used to choose which level of the hierarchy you are entering search criteria for.
Show only Affinities with Promotions	(All Screen Only) This prompt allows you to choose whether the results should be limited to promoted subclass affinities.

#### Table 7-11 Market Basket Filters

Once you have selected your desired filter settings, you may begin to review the market basket affinities. The main table on each screen describes the product affinities that were found when analyzing the market basket data, sorted in descending order by your chosen performance metric (the Top 10 By global prompt described earlier in this chapter). In addition to the product affinities, numerous metrics are provided to describe the market basket data that contains these products.

#### Figure 7-7 Market Basket Affinities

Customer Segment	Promotion		Then	Baskets	Avg Sales from "IF" Berns	Avp Profit from "#" ftems	Avg Sales Quantity from "If" Items	Avg Sales from Affinity ttems	Avg Profit from Affinity Rems	Avg Sales Quantity from Affinity Items
		Ground	Single Serve	115	\$562.01	\$14.59	192,571	\$405.06	\$62.28	176.288
		Single Serve	Ground	115	\$405.06	\$62.20	176.205	\$662.01	\$14.59	192.571



Field Name	Description
Customer Segment	(Customer Segment screen only) Displays the customer segment for which the product affinity was found.
Promotion	(All affinities screen only) Displays whether the rule represents IF components that were on promotion.
lf	Displays the classes or subclasses containing items that were purchased in the market baskets for a given product affinity. All market baskets that contributed to a rule will contain items from these product categories.
Then	Displays the class or subclass that was found to have an affinity with the IF components of the market basket rule. Market baskets containing the IF categories were found to contain items from the THEN category enough times to establish a product affinity between the IF and THEN components.
Baskets	The number of market baskets that contain items from both the IF and THEN components of the rule.
Avg Sales from If Items	The average sales retail amount from items belonging to the IF classes or subclasses.
Avg Profit from If Items	The average sales profit from items belonging to the IF classes or subclasses.
Avg Sales Quantity from If Items	The average sales units from items belonging to the IF classes or subclasses.
Avg Sales from Affinity Items	The average sales retail amount from items belonging to the THEN class or subclass.
Avg Profit from Affinity Items	The average sales profit from items belonging to the THEN class or subclass.
Avg Sales Quantity from Affinity Items	The average sales units from items belonging to the THEN class or subclass.

Table 7-12	Market Basket Affinities
------------	--------------------------

The purpose of these summary metrics is to provide a quick view of the sales and profitability of the market baskets described by each rule. Even though a market basket affinity is present in a large number of baskets, it may not generate much profit or be of particular interest to the business user at this time. The summary metrics allow the user to quickly identify market basket affinities that are worth analyzing in more detail. Once the user has selected a rule to investigate, clicking that row in the table generates additional information about it in a panel to the right side of the screen.

# Figure 7-8 Market Basket Affinity Details

×
0.09%
12.9862
66.6309
0.8159

# Table 7-13 Market Basket Affinity Details

Field Name	Description
Support	The percent of market baskets that contain items from the IF and THEN components of the rule.
	Written as a formula: Rule Transaction Count/Total Transaction Count
Confidence	The ratio of the number of transactions where the entire rule is present, compared to all transactions containing IF items.
	Written as a formula: Rule Transaction Count/Total IF Transaction Count
Reverse Confidence	The ratio of the number of transactions where the entire rule is present, compared to all transactions containing THEN items. If a rule has a higher Reverse Confidence than its own Confidence value, then it indicates that the rule is better represented by the reversal of the IF and THEN components.
	Written as a formula: Rule Transaction Count / Total THEN Transaction Count
Lift	A statistical measure of how strong the product affinity is, as compared to random chance for the rule (higher is better).
	Written as a formula: Rule Transaction Count * Total Transaction Count / Total IF Transaction Count/Total THEN Transaction Count
Sales Amt Pct Of Total	The percent of total sales retail amount that the rule represents.
	Written as a formula: Rule Sales Amount/Average Weekly Total Sales
Avg Rule Sales Amt	The average weekly sales retail amount across all transactions containing the rule.
Avg Rule Sales Profit Amt	The average weekly sales profit across all transactions containing the rule.
Avg Rule Sales Qty	The average weekly sales units across all transactions containing the rule.
Avg Total Sales Amt	The average weekly sales retail amount across all transactions.
Avg Tot Sales Profit Amt	The average weekly sales profit across all transactions.
Avg Tot Sales Qty	The average weekly sales units across all transactions.
Avg Tot Txn Cnt	The average weekly transaction count across all transactions.

The detailed metrics for a rule provide more ways to evaluate if the rule is going to be useful for your business purpose. For example, a rule that has both high support and high



confidence represents a strong product affinity that is purchased by many of your customers. Any action taken on the categories in such a rule, such as promoting a subclass on the IF side of the rule, can have significant benefits for the THEN components of the rule. Another way to use these metrics is to consider the average sales or profit that a rule brings in relative to total sales over the same period. Rules that represent a significant profit amount may be a more valuable target for your efforts than rules with lower profitability.

Another way to view the market basket affinities is to click the button found to the left of each row in the data table. This button displays a pop-up window with all of the product affinities that have been found for the IF components of the rule. This can be especially useful when your goal is to find any relationships with a specific product category, rather than seeing all of the relationships between different products.

Avg Number of Ba g Sales from "IF"			Avg Profit from "IF" \$3.00 Avg Profit from Affinity \$68.44 Avg Sales from Affinity \$251.23								
f Ground Affinin View 🔻 📰	ties	tach									
Then	Avg Sales	Avg Profit	Avg Quantity	Baskets	Support	Confidence	Affinity Reverse Confidence	Lift	% MB Sales	Target Sales Value	
Single Serve	\$688.19	\$57.92	326	99	0.33%	0.0051	0.0171	0.0266	0.67%	\$102,055	
Whole	\$499.16	\$145.11	210	68	0.23%	0.0035	0.0195	0.0303	0.49%	\$102,055	
Instant	\$87.60	\$11.31	31	14	0.05%	0.0007	0.0083	0.0129	0.09%	\$102,055	

## Figure 7-9 Targeted Product Affinities Pop-Up

This screen is split into two main sections: the top section displays summary metrics for all rules associated with the IF components, and the bottom section displays all of the product affinities found for the IF components and a selection of detailed metrics for them.

#### Table 7-14 Targeted Product Affinities Summary Metrics

Field Name	Description
Avg Number of Baskets	The average number of baskets found on a rule containing the IF items.
Avg Sales from IF Items	The average sales retail amount for the IF items in the rules.
Avg Profit from IF Items	The average sales profit for the IF items in the rules.
Avg Sales from Affinity Item	The average sales retail amount for the THEN items in the rules.
Avg Profit from Affinity Item	The average sales profit for the THEN items in the rules.

Field Name	Description
Then	Displays the class or subclass that was found to have an affinity with the IF components of the market basket rule.
Avg Sales	The average weekly sales retail amount for the IF and THEN items in the rules.
Avg Profit	The average weekly sales profit for the IF and THEN items in the rules.
Avg Quantity	The average weekly sales units for the IF and THEN items in the rules.
Baskets	The number of market baskets that contain items from the IF and THEN components of the rule.
Support	The percent of market baskets that contain items from the IF and THEN components of the rule.
Confidence	The ratio of the number of transactions where the entire rule is present, compared to all transactions containing IF items.
Affinity Reverse Confidence	The ratio of the number of transactions where the entire rule is present, compared to all transactions containing THEN items.
Lift	A statistical measure of how strong the product affinity is, as compared to random chance for the rule (higher is better).
% MB Sales	The percent of total sales retail amount that the rule represents.
Target Sales Value	The average weekly total sales retail amount across all transactions in the selected periods.
Target Profit	The average weekly total sales profit across all transactions in the selected periods.
Target Sales Quantity	The average weekly total sales units across all transactions in the selected periods.

 Table 7-15
 Targeted Product Affinities Detail Metrics

This view of market basket affinities provides powerful insight into the relationships between different product categories, as it may expose affinities even between seemingly unrelated categories that your customers tend to purchase together. This screen allows you to see how actions taken on the target (IF) products will impact other areas within your business. For example, any action taken to increase the sales of an IF category can lift the sales of all other products with a strong affinity to those items. Conversely, if you have a category that is performing poorly on the THEN side of a rule, you may be able to take action on the IF products to boost that category's sales indirectly.

# Using Market Basket Rules

There are a variety of ways to take action within your business based on the insights that AA provides. The most common use is to develop a promotion strategy that takes advantage of product affinities to maximize halo effects across other categories. By reducing the amount spent on promotions while increasing the effect of those promotions, you can realize additional revenue and boost profit margins. For example, by analyzing the AA results, it is possible to identify multiple product categories with affinities on a target category, where some categories are more profitable than others. This can provide alternatives for promoting items that will yield more in sales or profit than a more obvious affinity like Hot Dogs and Hot Dog Buns.



Another common practice is for store planners and planogrammers to take advantage of product affinities when deciding how to arrange the products on the shelf or for adding aisle end-caps for strongly associated product categories. AA can show obvious relationships like Bread and Peanut Butter, but it may also reveal previously unknown associations like Pet Food and Beer. Using market basket rules to inform store layouts allows you to place commonly purchased groups of products close together in the store, increasing the chance of customers purchasing more from those categories.

Combining market basket analysis with customer segments further enhances the potential benefits of AA. Customer behavior information is obtained from mining transaction history, and it is correlated with customer segment attributes to inform your promotion strategies. The ability to understand market basket affinities allows marketers to calculate, monitor, and build promotion strategies based on critical metrics such as customer profitability and preferred categories.

As an example, consider a marketer that is planning promotions for the Soda and Chips categories. While analyzing the data in Affinity Analysis, the marketer finds that a particular customer segment, College Singles, has a very strong affinity for buying Soda any time they purchase Chips.Armed with this knowledge, the marketer may decide to create a targeted offer for this customer segment only on the Chips category, knowing that they are likely to also buy Soda in the same basket. This kind of offer is more cost effective than a company-wide promotion on both the chips and soda categories, but may yield almost the same results, because the offer has focused in on the customers that will generate the most revenue in these categories.

# Affinity Analysis

This section addresses MBI analysis. The functionality described here includes creating custom runs and comparing the results of multiple runs.

System runs are executed automatically once a week as part of the weekly batch cycle using settings that have been configured for a specific level of the location hierarchy. Since system runs occur weekly, they can be used to examine results over a long period of time.

User runs can be run at any time by an individual user who specifies the settings for the run.

Two types of comparison are available: Compare Runs and Compare Results.

Use Compare Runs to select specific runs to compare. This comparison is useful for straightforward runs such as comparing the results of two different months.

Use Compare Results to compare system runs only, with specified dates and other filters. In this case, take care in selecting runs that overlap, as some runs may be represented in the results more than once.

# Affinity Analysis Overview

The Affinity Analysis Overview screen provides the tools in the following images. In addition to the standard application functionality, you can also

- Select from the following functionality using the Action drop-down menu:
  - Create Custom run



- Delete
- Refresh
- Add to Baseline Set
- Add to Comparison Set
- Select the type of run to view in this screen: User-Run, System-Run, or all runs.

Figure 7-10 Affinity Analysis Overview Functionality

Recommendations × Aff		Ilysis Overview	×
Actions View V	×		Detach
Create Custom Run			
Delete			
Refresh		Run Type	Hier Le
Add to Baseline Set	E	U	SKU
Add to Comparison Set	c15	U	SKU

The Affinity Analysis Overview table, shown in the following figure, displays the list of completed runs and contains the following fields.

Figure 7-11 Affinity Analysis Overview Table

		System-P																
Actions	s w View w -	ŀΧ	62	Deta	ch													
							PHD INF	1980 1972	1980 1970									
Batch d	Run Name	Run Type	Hier Level	Batch Status	Created By	Created	Updated	From	То	Promo Detail	Location Ext Code	Location	Customer Seg Ext Code	Custome Segment	Transaction Count	Total Sales Amount	Total Sales Profit Amount	Total Sales Quantit
03	ltern_Jan1_NE	U	SKU	Completed	mbauser	1/30/19	1/30/19	1/1/16	1/1/18	N	8	North A			5982	\$27,750.55	\$3,813.24	7543
01	Item_NE_Dec15	U	SKU	Completed	mbauser	1/30/19	1/30/19	12/1/15	12/31/15	N	1	Northea			138931	\$650,641	\$94, <mark>49</mark> 8.49	186830
65	Item_stores_1	U	SKU	Completed	mbauser	1/29/19	1/29/19	11/1/15	1/31/16	N					9392	\$38,342.72	\$4,538.56	11858
64	Item holiday 2	U	SKU	Completed	mbauser	1/29/19	1/29/19	12/1/15	12/30/15	N					58876	\$282,561	\$42,760.69	81573



Field Name	Description
Batch ID	Identifies the run.
Run Name	User-provided name for the run.
Run Type	U = User -Run; S = System-Run.
Hier Level	Hierarchy level.
Batch Status	Indicates the status of the run. Helps to determine if the run has completed, encountered any errors, or has not yet completed.
Created By	User name of person who created the run.
Created	Date when run created.
Updated	Date when run last updated.
From	Beginning date for run data collection.
То	Ending date for run data collection.
Promo Detail	Y indicates that the market basket affinities between different subclasses are displayed when the antecedent (if) components are promoted and the consequent (then) components are not promoted.
	N indicates that no consideration is given to whether or not the items are promoted.
Location Ext Code	The numeric identifier for the location.
Location	The external identifier for the location.
Customer Seg Ext Code	The external identifier for the customer segment.
Customer Segment	The name of the customer segment which the results are for. Values include Soccer Mom, Simply Seniors, Value Seekers, Gourmet Shoppers, Livin Large.
Transaction Count	Total number of transactions processed for this run.
Total Sales Amount	Total sales amount processed for this run.
Total Sales Profit Amount	Total sales profit amount processed for this run.
Total Sales Quantity	Total sales quantity processed for this run.

## Table 7-16 Affinity Analysis

When you click on a specific **Run Name**, you see a pop-up that displays Filter Results and Affinities Search Results.

## **Filter Results**

The following figure shows the Filter Results and Affinities Search Results, which are displayed when you click on a specific Run Name. The fields are described in following tables. **Search** button to initiate the filtering process and use the **Reset** button to clear the filter fields.



4 F	ilter F	Results																				
		De De	partment								Class			v.				Sub Cla	55			
			Item				1. 11			Top Res	ults By	Net Sales					Top Res	ults Display	ed 10			
			All	8							5	Search							Res	ət		
ffin	ities \$	Search F	tesuits																			
ew	* !		₩D	etach																		
1																						
	dion	H	Then	Baskets	Avg Sales from "If" Items	Avg Profit from "If" Items	Avg Sales Quantity from "If" Items	Avg Sales from Affinity Items	Avg Profit from Affinity items	Avg Sales Quantity from Affinity Items	Support	Confidence	Affinity Reverse Confidence	Lift	% MB Sales	Avg Sales	Avg Profit	Avg Quantity	Target Sales Value	Target Sales Profit	Target Sales Quantity	Total Baske Sales Volum
		12356	12356	9.00	\$35.09	\$2.46	11.00	\$41.47	\$2.28	13.00	0.15%	0.0570	0.0214	0.8113	0.28%	\$76.56	\$4.74	24.00	\$27,76	\$3,81	7,643	5,992.
		12356	12356	9.00	\$41.47	\$2.28	13.00	\$35.09	\$2.46	11.00	0.15%	0.0214	0.0570	0.8113	0.28%	\$76.56	\$4.74	24.00	\$27,75	\$3,81	7,543	5,962.

Figure 7-12 Filter Results and Affinities Search Results Table

The following table describes the options you can use to filter the results that will be displayed.

Field	Description
Department	Select one or more departments for which the results should be filtered.
Item	Select the item within the department from the drop-down list.
All	Select to prevent any other filters from being used.
Class	Select one or more classes for which the results should be filtered.
Top Results By	Select a metric to see the top results by: Net Sales, Net Quantity, of Net Profit.
Sub Class	Select one or more subclasses for which the results should be filtered.
Top Results Displayed	Select a value (10, 20, 30970, 980) to limit the number of results displayed.

Table 7-17 Filter Results

#### **Affinities Search Results**

The Affinities Search Results section of the pop-up provides details about the observed associations (affinities) between sales transactions. It is expressed as "If a customer buys X, then that customer may also buy Y." The table describes the relevant values associated with the If/Then transactions and contains the following fields:

 Table 7-18
 Affinities Search Results

Field	Description
Customer Segment	(Customer Segment screen only) Displays the customer segment for which the product affinity was found.



Field	Description
Promotion	(All affinities screen only) Displays whether the rule represents IF components that were on promotion.
lf	Displays the classes or subclasses containing items that were purchased in the market baskets for a given product affinity. All market baskets that contributed to a rule will contain items from these product categories.
Then	Displays the class or subclass that was found to have an affinity with the IF components of the market basket rule.
Baskets	The number of market baskets that contain items from both the IF and THEN components of the rule.
Avg Sales from "If" Items	The average sales retail amount from items belonging to the IF classes or subclasses.
Avg Profit from "If" Items	The average sales profit from items belonging to the IF classes or subclasses.
Avg Sales Quantity from "If" Items	The average sales units from items belonging to the IF classes or subclasses.
Avg Sales from Affinity Items	The average sales retail amount from items belonging to the THEN class or subclass.
Avg Profit from Affinity Items	The average sales profit from items belonging to the THEN class or subclass.
Avg Sales Quantity from Affinity Items	The average sales units from items belonging to the THEN class or subclass.
Support	The percent of market baskets that contain items from the IF and THEN components of the rule.
Confidence	The ratio of the number of transactions where the entire rule is present, compared to all transactions containing IF items.
Affinity Reverse Confidence	The ratio of the number of transactions where the entire rule is present, compared to all transactions containing THEN items.
Lift	A statistical measure of how strong the product affinity is, as compared to random chance for the rule (higher is better).
% MB Sales	The percent of total sales retail amount that the rule represents.
Avg Sales	The average weekly sales retail amount for the IF and THEN items in the rules.
Avg Profit	The average weekly sales profit for the IF and THEN items in the rules.
Avg Quantity	The average weekly sales units for the IF and THEN items in the rules.
Target Sales Value	The average weekly total sales retail amount across all transactions in the selected periods.
Target Sales Profit	The average weekly total sales profit across all transactions in the selected periods.
Target Sales Quantity	The average weekly total sales units across all transactions in the selected periods.
Total Basket Sales Volume	The average weekly transaction count across all transactions.



## **Results Pop-up**

Click the right-hand icon for a specific row in the Results table to see If/Then Affinities for...pop-up. The pop-up shows all the other rules that have been discovered for the same If item. You can use this to compare the rules. In this way, you may discover another product with a stronger affinity for the item.

## Figure 7-13 Affinities For

Avg Number of I								ems <sup>32.</sup>	46		Avg	Profit from Affinity Item	<b>S1</b>
/g Sales from "If	"Items	35. <b>0</b> 9				Avg S	ales from Aff	tem \$3	1.9 <b>0</b>				
f 1235629 - Ne	wmans (	Dwn Nells		st Blend	- Caffeir	ated 12 oz	Bag Affinit	ies					
		III Detat											
Then	Avg Sales	Avg Profit	Avg Quantity	Baskets	Support	Confidence	Affinity Reverse Confidence	Lift	% MB Sales	Target Sales Value	Target Sales Profit	Target Sales Quantity	
					0.15%	0.0570	0.0214	0.8113	0.28%	\$27,750.55	\$3.813.24	7.543.00	
1235611 - Gev	\$76.56	\$4.74	24.00	9.00	0.10%	0.0070	0.0214	0.0110	0.2070	221,100.00	00,010.21	1,010.00	

The pop-up has the following fields.

Affinities For	
	Affinities For

Field	Description
Avg Number of Baskets	The average number of baskets across the runs for the combination of the If and Then items.
Avg Sales from "If" Items	The average sales retail amount from items belonging to the IF classes or subclasses.
Avg Profit from "If" Items	The average sales profit from items belonging to the IF classes or subclasses.
Avg Sales from Affinity Item	The average sales retail amount from item belonging to the THEN class or subclass.
Avg Profit from Affinity Item	The average sales retail amount from item belonging to the THEN class or subclass.
Then	Displays the class or subclass that was found to have an affinity with the IF components of the market basket rule.
Avg Sales	The average weekly sales retail amount for the IF and THEN items in the rules.
Avg Profit	The average weekly sales profit for the IF and THEN items in the rules.
Avg Quantity	The average weekly sales units for the IF and THEN items in the rules.
Baskets	The number of market baskets that contain items from both the IF and THEN components of the rule.



Field	Description
Support	The percent of market baskets that contain items from the IF and THEN components of the rule.
Confidence	The ratio of the number of transactions where the entire rule is present, compared to all transactions containing IF items.
Affinity Reverse Confidence	The ratio of the number of transactions where the entire rule is present, compared to all transactions containing THEN items.
Lift	A statistical measure of how strong the product affinity is, as compared to random chance for the rule (higher is better).
% MB Sales	The percent of total sales retail amount that the rule represents.
Target Sales Value	The average weekly total sales retail amount across all transactions in the selected periods.
Target Sales Profit	The average weekly total sales profit across all transactions in the selected periods.
Target Sales Quantity	The average weekly total sales units across all transactions in the selected periods.

## Table 7-19 (Cont.) Affinities For

## Panel

The side panel has two sections. To display the side panel, you must first select a row in the table. The top section reports some of the most useful values that are also displayed in the table. The bottom section explains the details regarding the run you are reviewing.



# Figure 7-14 Panel Top

If 1234816 - Tully's French Roast Dar

Support	0.13%
Confidence	0.0741
Reverse Confidence	0.0945
Lift	5.4780
Sales Amt Pct Of Total	0.45%
Avg Rule Sales Amt	\$174.42
Avg Rule Sales Profit Amt	\$0.00
Avg Rule Sales Qty	70.00
Avg Total Sales Amt	\$38,342.72
Avg Tot Sales Profit Amt	\$4,538.56
Avg Tot Sales Qty	11,858.00
Avg Tot Txn Cnt	9,392.00

# Figure 7-15 Panel Middle

If 1234816 - Tully's	French Roas
Results Parameters	
Minimum Support	0.02%
Minimum Confidence	0.0000
Minimum Reverse Confidence	0.0000
Minimum Lift	0.0001
Minimum Transactions	2.00
Maximum Number of Rules	9,999.00
Maximum Rule Size	2.00
Date From	11/1/2015
Date To	1/31/2016



#### Figure 7-16 Panel Bottom

Item Se	election	
Departmen	Class	Sub Class
1000-Co	10000-C	

# Location Selection

Locations
141 - 1100 Colorado Springs
153 - 1165 Flagstaff
123 - 1185 Greensboro
Segment Selection
Customer Segments
No data to display

# **Compare Results**

To compare results, select the two runs you want to compare. Highlight one run and click **Add to Baseline Set**. Highlight the second run and click **Add to Comparison Set**. You see these selections in the Compare Results right panel.

Figure 7-17 Panel Showing Run Selection

Hier Level SKU

- **A** Baseline Set
- 503 Item\_Jan1\_NE
- Comparison Set
- 501 Item\_NE\_Dec15



Click **View** to see the comparison. the View Results pop-up displays, which can be filtered by a combination of Department Item, Class, Top Results By, Subclass, and Top Results Displayed.

The results are displayed as a pair of rows for each item, a baseline row followed by a comparison row.

Field	Description
lf	Displays the classes or subclasses containing items that were purchased in the market baskets for a given product affinity. All market baskets that contributed to a rule will contain items from these product categories.
Then	Displays the class or subclass that was found to have an affinity with the IF components of the market basket rule.
Set	Indicates whether the row of data is for the baseline runs or the comparison runs.
Set Size	The number of Item/Then components in the affinity rule. For example, "If Coffee and Creamer Then Sugar" has a Set Size of 3.
Baskets	The number of market baskets that contain items from both the IF and THEN components of the rule.
Avg Sales from Affinity Items	The average sales retail amount from items belonging to the THEN class or subclass.
Avg Profit from Affinity Items	The average sales profit from items belonging to the THEN class or subclass.
Avg Sales Quantity from Affinity Items	The average sales units from items belonging to the THEN class or subclass.
Avg Sales from "If" Items	The average sales retail amount from items belonging to the IF classes or subclasses.
Avg Profit from "If" Items	The average sales profit from items belonging to the IF classes or subclasses.
Avg Sales Quantity from "If" Items	The average sales units from items belonging to the IF classes or subclasses.
Support	The percent of market baskets that contain items from the IF and THEN components of the rule.
Confidence	The ratio of the number of transactions where the entire rule is present, compared to all transactions containing IF items.
Affinity Reverse Confidence	The ratio of the number of transactions where the entire rule is present, compared to all transactions containing THEN items.
Lift	A statistical measure of how strong the product affinity is, as compared to random chance for the rule (higher is better).
% MB Sales	The percent of total sales retail amount that the rule represents.
Avg Sales	The average weekly sales retail amount for the IF and THEN items in the rules.
Avg Profit	The average weekly sales profit for the IF and THEN items in the rules.
Avg Quantity	The average weekly sales units for the IF and THEN items in the rules.

Table 7-20Compare Results



Field	Description
Target Sales Value	The average weekly total sales retail amount across all transactions in the selected periods.
Target Sales Profit	The average weekly total sales profit across all transactions in the selected periods.
Target Sales Quantity	The average weekly total sales units across all transactions in the selected periods.
Total Basket Sales Volume	The average weekly transaction count across all transactions.

Table 7-20	(Cont.)	Compare	Results
------------	---------	---------	---------

# Create Custom Run

To create a custom run, select **Create Custom Run** from the Action drop-down. You see the Create Custom Run pop-up with two pages - Item Selection and Results Parameters. Need more info about recommendations to create a run.

Use the Item Selection page to select the items to include in the results, including the level of the results and the hierarchy nodes to include.

Provide a meaningful name for the **Run Name** that can help identify the run.

The **Results Level** defines the level of the hierarchy that the data is created for. Lower levels can require lower thresholds on the Results Parameters page (in order to find results), while higher levels can include too many results if the settings are not increased on the Results Parameters page.

The **Filter Data Level** is used to define rules regarding how to filter data. For example, if the results are only required for specific departments, then select Departments as the level and then select the departments.

A Promotion value of **Yes** only includes results in which the If component was on a promotion. A value of **No** is used when there is no concern about whether a promotion was present or not.

After entering item criteria, click **Add Item Selection**. The bottom section of the screen is populated with the results of the selection. You can also see this information in the right panel.



1 Item Selection 2 Results Pa	arameters	
▲ Item Sele tion		
Run Name		
Results Level	Sub Class	-
Filter Data Level		-
Filter Results By Department		-
Filter Results By Class		•
Filter Results By Sub Class		•
Promotion	No	•

Figure 7-18 Item Selection Tab

The Results Parameters page, which is shown in Figure 7-19, is displayed in the right panel. The minimum value for transactions is used to prevent a situation in which there are too many results because so many transactions have been used in the calculations.

Figure 7-19 Results Parameters Tab

Results Parameters			
Minimum Support	0.00001	Date From	
Minimum Confidence	0.00001	Date To	
linimum Reverse Confidence	0.00001	Segments	
Minimum Lift	0.0001	Locations	•
		Locations	
Minimum Transactions	2		
Naximum Number of Rules	9999		
Maximum Rule Size	2		



Table 7-21 explains how to interpret these values.

Field	Description
Minimum Support	The minimum percent of total transactions required to have this rule expressed as a decimal value. (0 - 1 range)
Minimum Confidence	The minimum confidence ratio required for a rule expressed as a decimal value. (0 - 1 range)
Minimum Reverse Confidence	The minimum confidence ratio required for the reverse rule definition, expressed as a decimal value. (0 - 1 range)
Minimum Lift	The minimum lift value required for a rule.
Minimum Transactions	The minimum value for transactions are used to prevent a situation in which there are too many results because too many transactions have been used in the calculations. This value also helps ensure some consistency if the transaction volume varies enough for Minimum Support to be used.
Maximum Number of Rules	The limit on the top number of rules to be saved from the results. Used to reduce data volume and remove the less significant rules.
Maximum Rule Size	The number of components to be included in a rule. The value of 2 is only supported for rules that include promotion or item results; otherwise, the value of 3 is supported. The additional components are always on the If side of the rule.
Dates From and To	The date range for processing sales data. This value must not span an excessive length of time, as the amount of data processed can become too large to manage reasonably.
Segments	Select any customer segments that should be included when determining the sales transactions to process.
Location	Limit the locations that should be included when determining the sales transactions to process. This can be done by selecting any hierarchy level and then multi-selecting any locations at that level.

# Table 7-21 Results Parameters

# Manage Affinity Analysis

Use the Manage Affinity Analysis screen to view the results from all system created runs. Set the filters, select a range of calendar dates, and click **Submit**. The Info Tiles are displayed.

## Figure 7-20 Manage Affinity Analysis Filters

Recommendations	× Manage	Affinity Analysis 🗙				
Тор 10 Ву	Net Sales	•	From		То	
Department		•	Location	1-Spaces Grocery 💌	Submit	



## Info Tiles

The Info Tiles display the results from all system runs. Once you specify the filters to indicate what runs you want to use, the Info tiles display an aggregate view of the results for different hierarchy levels and the types of processing that were executed during the run. Select an Info Tile and use the filters below the tiles to view the affinities for your selection.

# Figure 7-21 Info Tiles

Тор 10 Ву	Net Prof	fit 💌		From	1/1/2019			То	1/31/2019	İ
Department	4000-Pr	oduce 💌		Location	1-Spaces Groc	cen 💌			Submit	
0	Class 0	0	Sub Class 0	0	Promotion 0	Customer S	Segment 0	0		All O
Profit Share	0%	Profit Share	0%	Profit Share	0%	Profit Share	0%			
Sales Share	0%	Sales Share	0%	Sales Share	0%	Sales Share	0%			

Each tile has specific filters. Here is an example of the filters for the All tile.

## Figure 7-22 All Info Tile Filters

Select Product Hierarchy	Class	•	Classes	•	Customer Segments			v	Show only Affinities	•
Тор	10	•	All			Search	Reset		with Promotions	

# **Compare Results**

You can use Compare Results to compare system runs only, using the dates and filters you specify, as shown in Figure 7-23.



ompare Result	c								
ompare Result	3								
lierarchy Level	Class	•							
Department						•			
Class						•			
Sub Class						•			
Baseline Set					Comparison	Set			
Date Ranges									
	То			VS.			То		
Customer Segme	nts								
None			•	VS.	None				•
Locations									
			•	VS.					•
Promotions									
🔘 Yes 🗿 No				VS.	🔘 Yes 🍥	No			
								View	Cance

Figure 7-23 Compare Results

Click View. Table 7-20 describes the results of the Compare Results functionality.



# 8 Size Profiles

This chapter describes the Size Profiles Cloud Service module.

# Overview

The Size Profiles (SP) is a module under Retail Profile Sciences and is used to estimate the distribution of demand across different sizes (size profile) for different merchandise and location levels.

Size profile is estimated at different levels of merchandise and location. The lowest level of estimation is style-color (for merchandise) and store (for location). Size profiles may also be estimated at higher levels of aggregation on both the merchandise and location dimensions (for example, at subclass-store or style/color-store cluster) depending on the retailer's requirements. Irrespective of the level of estimation, the final output for size profiles is at lowest level (style-color/store) and size profiles are shown at the lowest level in the UI.

At a high level, the workflow for SP consists of creating a run, reviewing, overriding, and approving the output (that is, size profiles), and submitting the output to another user for further review or to a downstream application.

# Navigation

You can use the Info tiles at the top of the screen, shown in the following image, to navigate to:

- All Runs, which displays all previously created runs.
- Approved Profiles, which displays the approved profiles for all runs.
- Assigned Tasks, which displays all profiles assigned to the user for review.

# Figure 8-1 Info Tiles

# All Runs

The All Runs screen, lists all previously created runs, regardless of their status.



## Figure 8-2 All Runs

All	Runs Approve		Assigned Tasks							
Runs									Recent Successful Runs	
ctions <b>*</b> View	w <b>≠</b>   + ⊕ ∠	/ 100 X	⊙  ≓ Detach						RUN @ HJ 0 Kink Exceptions	
Status	Run Name	All Profiles	Run Description	Region	Department	Season	Created On	Created By	No data to display 0 Delta Alerts 0 Normal Profiles	
🛇 Successful	RUN @ HJ	No data to	Test	US Eastern Region (EER)	Active Apparel	Spring 2016	04/10/19, 9:42 AM	spouser	US Eastern Region (EERLActive Apparel	
Successful	RUN @ 04/10/19, 1:39:05 AM	No data to		Illinois	Shorts	Spring 2016	04/10/19, 1:39 AM	spouser	RUN @ 04/10/19, 1:39:05 AM	
Successful	RUN @ 04/09/19, 7:18:42 PM	No data to		Illinois	Shorts	Spring 2016	04/09/19, 7:23 PM	spouser	0 Kink Exceptions No data to display 0 Delta Alerts 0 Normal Profiles	
🕄 Setup	RUN @ 04/09/19, 7:15:54 PM			Illinois	Caps	Spring 2016	04/09/19, 7:15 PM	spouser	U Normal Profiles	
Successful	RUN @ 04/09/19, ≥35:03 PM	No data to	sb test	Minois	Sharts	Spring 2016	04/09/19, 2:35 PM	spouser	RUN @ 04/09/19, 7:18:42 PM	
S Failed	copy of RUN @ 04/09/19, 1:55:08 PM		SB test	Connecticut	Shorts	Spring 2016	04/09/19, 2:34 PM	spouser	0 Kink Exceptions No data to display 0 Delta Alerts	

Click the **Run Name** on any run with a status of Setup, In Progress, or Successful, in order to open that run. The Output tab opens.

When you select a run with a status of Setup, you can modify the information and parameters for creating a run and complete the Create Run process, as described in "Creating a Run".

When you select a run with a status of Successful or In Progress, you see the run output tab, as described in "Run Output".

You can filter any of the columns by entering text into the filter bar.

The Recent Successful Run list is displayed in the contextual area on the right. You can also click a run in this list in order to open it.

# Creating a Run

To estimate size profiles, you create a run and specify the settings to be used for the estimation. To begin the process, either click the **Create** icon at the top of the overview table or select a row in the overview table and click the **Duplicate** icon to duplicate a run. In either case, the Create Run screen is displayed.



<ol> <li>Information</li> </ol>	(2) Size Ranges	③ Parameters *				
ment - Womens Ac America Details						
Run Name *	RUN @ 08/20/21	2.09:50 PM	Run Description			
р						
P Area *	32-America	🔹 America	Department *	0003-Womens Activeveer	- V	fomens Activowear
	32-America 43-US Central Region (CER)	• Amirica		0003-Womens Activewear 0006-Active Accessories	v V	Komens: Activewear
Area .	43-US Central Region (CER)					Komens Activownar
Area.* Region *			Class *	0006-Active Accessories	*	Komens Activeenaar

Figure 8-3 Create Run Showing Information Tab

The Create Run screen has the following features:

- Three tabs: the "Information Tab", the "Size Ranges Tab", and the "Parameters Tab".
- The **Save** button, which saves the changes made in any of the tabs.
- The **Cancel** button, which discards the changes in the current tab and closes the Create Run screen.
- The **Submit** button, which saves all changes, begins the execution of the run, and closes the screen. At this point, the status of the run changes from Setup to In Progress.
- The contextual area on the right, which displays a summary of user selections in each of the three tabs.

# Information Tab

Use the Information tab, to provide the run name and description in the Run Details section. Use the drop-down lists in the Setup section to select the products and locations that the size profile should be generated for. Select the season code for the time period for the analysis.

# Size Ranges Tab

A size range consists of a set of all available sizes for each style-color. For example, the size range for the style-color of Men's Pullover Black and Store of Boston Downtown is S, M, L, XL. The size range data is provided by retailer.

In the Size Ranges tab, shown in Figure 8-4, size range data is shown for each style-color and each store. If a certain size is not available in a size range, it will be shown as greyed out. If a size has been specified as an expected Kink Size (which means it is an odd size that may have significantly fewer or more sales than other sizes), it will be shown in blue.

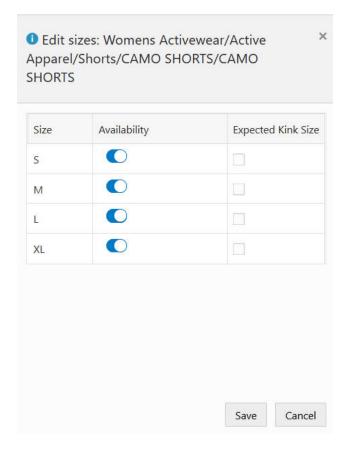


🥏 Info	rmation	<li>Siz</li>	e Ranges	<li>③ Para</li>	ameters							
Size Range	S View *	/   0   0	1 • 🔽 -	r" Detach					A		res are in <b>Bo</b> zes are in Bl	
Department	Class	Sub Class	Style	Style Color	Sizes	Area	Region	District	Store			
Filter	(itter)	Eller	Filter	Filler	Filter	Filter	Eller	Filter	FILM			
Womens Ac	Active Appa	Shorts	SQUADRA S	SQUADRA S	S, M, L, XL	America	US Central	Illinois	Chica	go		
Womens Ac	Active Appa	Shorts	CAMO SHO_	CAMO SHO	S, M, L, XL	America	US Central	Illinois	Chica	go		
Womens Ac	Active Appa	Shorts	SQUADRA S	SQUADRA S	5, M, L, XL	America	US Central	Illinois	Chica	go		
Womens Ac	Active Appa	Shorts	JUMP SHOR	JUMP SHOR	S, M, L, XL	America	US Central	Illinois	Schau	mburg		
Womens Ac	Active Appa	Shorts	SQUADRA S	SQUADRA S	S, M, L, XL	America	US Central	Illinois	Schau	mburg		
Womens Ac	Active Appa	5horts	SQUADRA S	SQUADRA S	S, M, L, XL	America	US Central	Illinois	Chica	go		
Womens Ac	Active Appa	Shorts	KNIT SHORTS	KNIT SHORT	S. M. L. XL	America	US Central	Illinois	Chica	go		
Womens Ac	Active Appa	Shorts	PLAY UP SH	PLAY UP SH	S, M, L, XL	America	US Central	Illinois	Chica	go		
Womens Ac	Active Appa	Shorts	PLAY UP SH	PLAY UP SH	S, M, L, XL	America	US Central	Illinois	Galen	a		
Womens Ac	Active Appa	Shorts	PLAY UP SH	PLAY UP SH_	S, M, L, XL	America	US Central	Illinois	Schau	mburg		
Womens Ac	Active Appa	Shorts	KNIT SHORTS	KNIT SHORT	S. M, L, XL	America	US Central	Illinois	Galen	a		
110 A.S.				courses o	a	1.1.1.2.1	100.00	Catholic All				

Figure 8-4 Create Run Showing Size Ranges Tab

To edit the available sizes and kink size flags, select a row and click the **Edit** icon. This opens a pop-up, shown in Figure 8-5

# Figure 8-5 Edit Available Sizes





# Parameters Tab

The Parameters tab displays the following parameters, which are used by the size profile generation algorithm. The escalation path is used to find the optimal size profiles associated with each style-color and store. When a size profile at a given level of the escalation path does not meet the post-processing criteria, it automatically gets rejected and the size profile associated with a higher level is examined. This process continues until a valid size profile is fond at one of the levels along the escalation path.

- Pre-Processing Settings
- Post-Processing Settings
- Estimation Parameters
- Escalation Paths

You can edit the values for these parameters, as shown in Figure 8-6.

#### Figure 8-6 Create Run Showing Parameters Tab

S Information	Size R	anges 3 Param	eters				
Pre-Processing S	ettings						
SKU/Store Start and E	nd Dates		SKU-Parent/St	ore Elig	ibilty		
Minimum Sales	0.0	🖌 Default Value (0)	Minimum Sales	4.0		Internet Value (4)	
Minimum Inventory and S	ales 10	🛃 Default Value (1)	Minimum SKUs			<table-cell> Default Value (2)</table-cell>	
Percent Maximum		Default Value (0.05)	Minimum Weeks	2.9		Gefault Value (2)	
SKU/Store Eligibility			SKU-Parent/St	ore/We	ek Eligib	ility	
Minimum Sales	1.0	Default Value (1)	Minimum SKUs	2		Clefault Value (2)	
SkU-Store Eligible Fraction	0.7	🕑 Default Value (0.1)	Valid Sizes Percer	ntege fi	6	💽 Default Value (0.41)	
Minimum Season Length	1.0	🧭 Default Value (1)					
SKU/Store/Week Eligi	bility		Size Profile Ge	neratio	n		
Minimum Sales		🕑 Default Value (0)	History Start Date	05/01	15 🕅	Default Value	
Minimum Inventory and S	ales 1.0	Default Value (1)	History End Date	07/31	15 00	Default Value	
Percent Maximum		🕑 Default Value (0)	Method	• Op	imization	O Normalize	
Dest Desession	Cattle as						
Post-Processing : Escalation Paths	settings						
Escalation Paths							
Available Values	Reset	Escalation Paths			Selected Vi	fues	
					Company/	Company	*
					Company	Chain	- 111
					Company)	Area	
				«	Company)		
					Company)	District	



# Reviewing a Run

Once the run has completed successfully, you can review the size profile output. You can override and approve or un-approve size profiles at style-color/store level in the Output screen.

# Run Output

To open a run with a status of Complete, click the **Run Name** in either the All Runs table or from the list of recent runs. The Run Output screen opens in a new tab. This screen has two tabs, Size Profiles and Inputs.



Siz	e Pro	ofile												Q,	ů s	pouser	*
ize Pro	tiles	×	Details for	Run with id: 232 ×													
		S	Size Profile			Input											
0		All Pr	ofiles	Approv	ed 🔺	Alert	s 🔺 Kink	Exceptions			Schaumburg	2.4			9		
									T	77	Womens Activewear/Active Apparel/	s 1.6	10-10	-	o of		Sales
		6	22	(	)	0		0	100	T. Mark	SQUADRA SHORTS	0.0			3 and		Invento
		<u> </u>							Alex .	1	Size S 💌	28 0.0	07/03/16 07/24/16 05/24/16	96/12/16	0		
												05/72/16 05/72/16	07/03/16 07/24/16	U/90			
											Notes	🕈 Flagged	🖌 🖌 Auto Appro	wed	0.	User	Appro
		• Vie		/ 📰 🛒 Deta		Seed System SP	å Approve							wed	0.	User	Appro
Actio	ns	<ul> <li>Vie</li> <li>Action</li> </ul>	n Area	Region	District	Store	Department	Class Active Apparel	Sub Class	Style	Style Color	Escalation Path	Size Profiles	oved	0.4	User	Appro
Actio		<ul> <li>Vie</li> <li>Action</li> </ul>		Region		A CONTRACTOR OF A CONTRACTOR OFTA CONTRACTOR O	Department	Class Active Apparel	Sub Class Shorts		Style Color		Size Profiles Approved	oved		User	Appro
Actio	ns	<ul> <li>Vie</li> <li>Action</li> </ul>	n Area	Region	District	Store	Department			Sheumerina.	Style Color	Escalation Path	Size Profiles Approved	100%		User	Appro
Actio	ns	<ul> <li>Vie</li> <li>Action</li> </ul>	n Area	Region	District	Store	Department			Sheumerina.	Style Color	Escalation Path	Size Profiles Approved User Sales Profile	100% 0% S	0% 0% M	L	XL
vetio	ns '	Vie Action	n Area America	Region	District Illinois	Store Chicago	Department	Active Apparel	Shorts	SHORTS	Style Color	Escalation Path COLOR\DISTRICT	Size Profiles Approved User Sales Profile System	100% 0% S	0% 0% M	L	XL
Actio 050	ns '	<ul> <li>Vie</li> <li>Action</li> </ul>	n Area America	Region our occurrent incigion (CER)	District	Store	Department womens Activewear			Sheumerina.	Style Color autocorro SHORTSWHITE	Escalation Path	Size Profiles Approved User Sales Profile System Approved	100% 0% \$ 12%	0% 0% M 0% 1	L 1	<b>XL</b> 73%
Actio 050	ns '	Vie Action	n Area America	Region Go control negrour (CER) US Central Region	District Illinois	Store Chicago	Department Activewear Womens	Active Apparel	Shorts	SHORTS	Style Color SHORTS WHITE CAMO SHORTS NOT	Escalation Path COLOR\DISTRICT	Size Profiles Approved User Sales Profile System Approved User	100% 0% \$ 12%	0% 0% M 0% 1	L 3 15% 7 15% 7	<b>XL</b> 73%
Actio	ns '	Vie Action	n Area America	Region Go control negrour (CER) US Central Region	District Illinois	Store Chicago	Department Activewear Womens	Active Apparel	Shorts	SHORTS	Style Color SHORTS WHITE CAMO SHORTS NOT	Escalation Path COLOR\DISTRICT	Size Profiles Approved User Sales Profile System Approved	100% 0% \$ 12% 12% 0%	056 0% M 0% 1 0% 1 0%	L : 5% 7 5% 7 0%	<b>XL</b> 73% 73%
Actio	ns '	Vie Action	n Area America	Region Go control negrour (CER) US Central Region	District Illinois	Store Chicago	Department Activewear Womens	Active Apparel	Shorts	SHORTS	Style Color SHORTS WHITE CAMO SHORTS NOT	Escalation Path COLOR\DISTRICT	Size Profiles Approved User Sales Profile System Approved User Sales Profile	100% 0% \$ 12% 12% 0% \$	0% 0% M 0% 1 0% 1 0% M	L 3 5% 7 0% L	XL 7396 7396 096 XL
20052	ns '	Vie Action	n Area America	Region Go control negrour (CER) US Central Region	District Illinois	Store Chicago	Department Activewear Womens	Active Apparel	Shorts	SHORTS	Style Color SHORTS WHITE CAMO SHORTS NOT	Escalation Path COLOR\DISTRICT	Size Profiles Approved User Sales Profile System Approved User	100% 0% \$ 12% 12% 0% \$	0% 0% M 0% 1 0% 1 0% M	L 3 5% 7 0% L	XL 7396 7396 096 XL

### Size Profiles Tab

The Size Profiles tab displays the generated size profiles for each style-color/store for a specific run. You can filter the profiles based on their approved and alert status using the three Info tiles at the top of the screen for All Profiles, Approved, Kink Exceptions, and Alerts.

Below the tiles, you can use the collapsible filter section to filter the size profiles based on product and location hierarchies. You can also use the check-box filters above the table to filter profiles by status (auto/user approved) as well as a notes/flag.

#### **Size Profiles Table**

The size profiles table is multi-row selectable, using the Ctrl and Shift buttons. All rows can be selected at once by clicking on the top-left cell in the table. This table has the following columns:



- The first column (with no header) shows the status of the profile. Values are user approved (<sup>a</sup>), auto approved (<sup>a</sup>), not approved (<sup>a</sup>).
- The action column has the note and flag icons. Values are some notes have been added
   (<sup>a</sup>), no notes added yet (<sup>a</sup>), flagged (<sup>\*</sup>), not flagged (<sup>\*</sup>).

You can click on the note icon to view or edit the notes in a pop-up. You can also click the flag icon to flag or un-flag a size profile.

- The columns that show the product and location hierarchy (for example, Zone, Store, Class, Style).
- The escalation path that indicates the level at which the size profile has been generated.

The size profiles chart shows the following values:

- System: the size profile generated by the system (using the estimation algorithm)
- User: the values edited by the user. If the user has not edited the values or has not seeded system values in order to populate user values, this row will be empty.
- Approved: the approved values, if the size profile was approved. If the size profile has not been approved, this row will be empty.
- Sales Profile: shows the profile of the observed sales (without estimating the lost sales and any other post-processing).

The following actions can be done in the Size Profiles table:

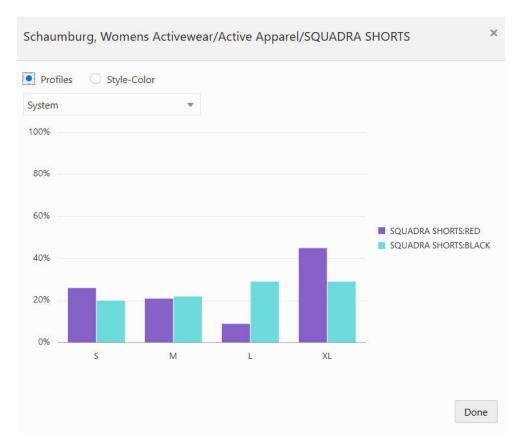
- Seed the user values with the System size profile by selecting one, multiple, or all rows and clicking on the Seed System SP button at the top of the table.
- Edit a profile in the edit pop-up by selecting a single row and clicking on the Edit icon at the top of the table. If a size profile is approved, edit is not allowed. To edit, the user must first un-approve the profile. The edit pop-up is shown in Figure 8-8. The edited values must sum up to 100 percent. If they do not, you will not be able to save. To normalize the values, you can use one of the two options (Normalize All or Normalize Edited). The first option adjusts all values so that they sum up to 100 percent. The second option adjusts only the edited values so that the sum of all the values becomes 100 percent.

	S	м	L	XL	
System	18%	21%	18%	44%	
Approved					
User	13%	43%	13%	31%	
Sales Profile	0%	0%	0%	0%	

 Approve or un-approve a profile by selecting one, multiple, or all rows and clicking on the Approve/Un-approve button at the top of the table.



- View and edit the notes on each profile using the Note icon in the Action column, which opens a pop-up.
- Flag or un-flag a profile by clicking on the Flag icon in the Action column.
- View the graphs for each profile by clicking on a hyper-linked style (which opens the graph pop-up and shows the Profile tab by default as shown in Figure 8-9), or by clicking on a hyper-linked color (which opens the pop-up and shows the Color tab by default as shown in Figure 10).



#### Figure 8-9 Profiles View

View the weekly sales and inventory and product image at the top of the screen for a selected row in the table.

#### Note:

If a profile (for a given style-color/location) has already been submitted or sent for review, the seed, approve/un-approve, and edit actions are not available. None of these actions can be performed for the profile. Note and flag can still be modified.



#### Note:

If a user approves a profile for a given style-color/store that has previously been approved in another run, it will override the older run. As a result, the previously approved profile will become unapproved.

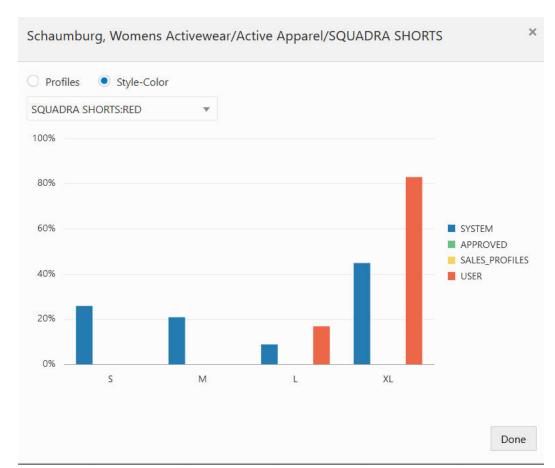
# Input Tab

The input tab shows a summary of all inputs for the run in read-only mode.

# Graphics

The Colors view shown in Figure 8-10, shows the four profiles (system, user, approved and sales profiles) for each color that is available within the selected style. You can select a different color from the drop-down list.

The Profiles view shown in Figure 8-9 shows one of the profiles (system, user, approved or sales profiles) for all colors under the style. You can select a different profile from the drop-down list.



#### Figure 8-10 Colors View



# Submitting a Run

You can see all the approved profiles across all runs in the Approved Profiles screen. You can also select one or multiple profiles and send them for further review to another user. Alternatively, you can submit one or multiple profiles to a downstream application. Depending on your user role, you may only be able to send the approved profile for review, but not submit it for final export.

# **Approved Profiles**

In the approved profiles screen, shown in Figure 8-11, you can view approved profiles across all runs.



° (	All Ra	uns O	Approved	100 100 100	Assigned Tat	sks												
Filters																		
Area		Reg	ion	Distric	2		ocation		epartment	Class		Sub Class	Style					
3315-Amerii			01-US Centi	al R * 3302	-Illinois	* A	AII.	* 4	I-Womens Activ			20-Caps	* All				Appl	
3315-Americ		s * 🛅	⊎ <sup>#</sup> Detac	h 🕜 Send for	Review 🖯	Şabmît			🔲 🗐 Note	es 🗌 🏲 Flagged	I 🗌 🕊 Auto Approv	ed 🗌 🛔 User A	pproved 🔲 🤇		ted	- <del>0</del> :	Sent fo	
3315-Ameria Approved Actions *	Profiles View	s * m Actions		h ① Send for Region	Review 8 District	Submit	Department	Class	Sub Class	es 📄 🏲 Flagged	Style Color	ed buser A	Approved On	Run	ted Size (	습 : Profile	Sent fc	or Re
3315-Americ	Profiles	s * 🛅	⊎ <sup>#</sup> Detac	h 🕜 Send for	Review 🖯	Şabmît			🔲 🗐 Note	es 🗌 🏲 Flagged	I 🗌 🕊 Auto Approv	ed Diser A	pproved 🔲 🤇		ted Size I	- <del>0</del> :	Sent fo	or Re
3315-Ameria pproved Actions *	Profiles View	s * m Actions	⊯″Detac Area	h 🕜 Send for Region US Eastern Region	Review 8 District	Submit	Department Womens	Class Active	Sub Class	s Flagged Style PRINTED	Auto Approv Style Color PRINTED SHORTSLIC	ed Approved By	Approved On	Run	ted Size I S 18% S	Profile	Sent fo L 1896 L	or Re
3315-Ameria pproved Actions *	View	s + m Actions m *	ef Detac Area America	h ① Send for Region US Eastern Region (EER) US Eastern Region	Review 🛛 District Connecticut	Submit Store Aventura	Department Womens Activewear Womens	Class Active Apparel Active	Sub Class	es Flagged Style PRINTED SHORTS	Style Color PRINTED SHORTSLIC GREY PLAY UP SHORTSLIC	ed by User A	Approved On 04/10/19	<b>Run</b> 181	size   Size   18% 5 66%	Profile M 21% M	Sent fc L 18% L 24%	or Re <b>XL</b> 449 <b>XL</b> 0%

The Filters section is the same as the one in the Run Output screen. You can use it to filter the size profiles based on product and location hierarchies. You can also use the check-box filters above the table to filter profiles by status (auto/user approved, submitted, and sent for review) as well as a notes/flag.

### Approved Profiles Table

The approved profiles table is multi-row selectable, using the Ctrl and Shift buttons. All rows can be selected at once by clicking on the top-left cell in the table. This table has the following columns:

- The first column (with no header) shows the status of the profile: Value are user approved (<sup>≤</sup>), auto approved (*✓*), submitted (<sup>☉</sup>), sent for review (<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>).
- The action column has the note and flag icons. Values are some notes have been added (<sup>a</sup>), no notes added yet (<sup>a</sup>), flagged (<sup>\*</sup>), not flagged (<sup>\*</sup>).
- You can click on the Note icon to view or edit the notes in a pop-up. You can also click the Flag icon to flag or un-flag a size profile.



- Columns that show the product and location hierarchy (for example, Zone, Store, Class, Style).
- The escalation path that indicates the level at which the size profile has been generated.
- Approved by, Approved on, and Run (on which the profile was approved).
- Size profiles shows the approved profile.

The following actions can be performed in this screen:

- View and edit the notes on each profile, using the Note icon in the Action column that opens a pop-up.
- Flag or un-flag a profile by clicking on the Flag icon in the Action column.
- Send a profile for review to another user role, using the **Send for Review** button above the table. It will open a pop-up in which you can select the reviewer role.

If a profile has been submitted, it cannot be sent for review again. The button will be disabled for submitted profiles.

• Submit the profile to be used by other applications using the **Submit** button above the table.

If a profile has been sent for review, it cannot be submitted again. So the button will be disabled for 'sent for review' profiles.

 View the graphs for each profile by clicking on a hyper-linked style (which opens the graph pop-up and shows the Profile tab by default as shown in Figure 8-9), or by clicking on a hyper-linked color (which opens the pop-up and shows the Color tab by default as shown in Figure 8-10).

### Assigned Tasks

In the Assigned Tasks screen, shown in Figure 8-12, you can see any profile that has been assigned to you for review by another user.

Filter	<b>(</b> 2 5	All Run	s • A	4	Assignment of the second secon	gned Tasks												
	ned T	asks																
		View *		🗐 📽 Detach	🏢 Seed Sy		🖯 Submit							0		s		Fla
sigr		View *	Area	er Detach Region	I Seed Sy District	ystem SP	Submit  Department	Class	Sub Class	Style	Style Color	Assigned On	Assigned By	Size Profiles				
sigr		View *			1			Class	Sub Class	Style	Style Color	Assigned On	Assigned By	Size Profiles	5	м	L	n
igr tior		View * Actions	Area	Region	District	Store	Department								5	м	L	
igr tior		View *			1			Class Active Apparel	Sub Class Shorts	Style PRINTED SHORTS	Style Color PRINTED SHORTSUIGHT GREY	Assigned On 04/10/19		Size Profiles System Approved	<b>S</b> 18%	<b>M</b> 2196	<b>L</b> 18%	
sigr		View * Actions	Area	Region US Eastern Region	District	Store	Department	Active			PRINTED SHORTSLIGHT			Size Profiles System Approved	5	<b>M</b> 2196	<b>L</b> 18%	

#### Figure 8-12 Assigned Tasks

The filters section is the same as the one in the Run Output screen. You can use it to filter the size profiles based on product and location hierarchies. You can also use the check-box filters above the table to filter profiles by status (auto/user approved, submitted, and sent for review) as well as a notes/flag.



### Assigned Tasks Table

The assigned tasks table is multi-row selectable using the Ctrl and Shift buttons. All rows can be selected at once by clicking on the top-left cell in the table. This table has the following columns:

- The first column (with no header) shows the status of the profile: Values are user approved (\*), auto approved (\*) as well as icons for notes (\*) and flag (\*). User can click on the note icon to view the notes in the opened pop-up. Note is not editable. The flag icon indicates whether the profile has been flagged by the sender user or not. The profile cannot be flagged or un-flagged in the assigned tasks screen.
- The columns that show the product and location hierarchy (for example, Zone, Store, Class, Style).
- The escalation path which indicates the level at which the size profile has been generated.
- Assigned on indicates the date the profile was approved on.
- Assigned by indicates the user who approved the profile.

Size profiles chart that shows the following values:

- System: the size profile generated by the system (using estimation algorithm)
- User: the values edited by the user. Initially this row shows the values edited by the sender user (if any edits has been made).
- Approved: the values that were approved by the sender user.
- Sales Profile: shows the profile of the observed sales (without estimating the lost sales and any other post-processing).

The following actions can be performed in this screen:

- Seed the user values with System size profile, by selecting one, or multiple, or all rows and clicking on the **Seed System SP** button at the top of the table.
- Edit a profile in the edit pop-up, by selecting a single row and clicking on the Edit icon at the top of the table.
- Submit the profile to be used by other applications, using the **Submit** button above the table.
- View the notes on each profile, using the in-line Note icon. Notes are not editable.
- View the graphs for each profile by clicking on a hyper-linked style (which opens the graph pop-up and shows the Profile tab by default as shown in Figure 8-9), or by clicking on a hyper-linked color (which opens the pop-up and shows the Color tab by default as shown in Figure 8-10).

# Submitted Profiles

In the Submitted Profiles screen, you can see the profiles that have been submitted. the submitted profiles are exported to a flat file (spo\_siz\_profile.csv) during the nightly batch or whenever the ad hoc process for export is executed. The profiles are shown in the Submitted Profiles screen only after the export is completed.



Note that the size profile algorithm generates profiles at the lowest level (that is, style-color/ location). After the profiles at the lowest level are approved and submitted by the user, a postprocessing step runs to generate profiles at the higher level of merchandise, based on the submitted profiles and their escalation level. Therefore, the export file and the submitted profiles table not only include size profiles at the lowest level, but also at the higher level of merchandise. (The highest level for which profiles are generated is determined by the configuration parameter SPO\_EXTRA\_PROFS\_MAX\_LVL.)

#### Figure 8-13 Submitted Profiles

1997												
(	All Runs 0	Approved Profil	as Assigned Ta	aks 0 Submitte	d Profiles							
ilters		1 1 20 40 1	Location Selection	Merchandise Lev	al.	Merchandise	o Salartinu	Escalation Level				
	g 2016:01 + Comp		1-WORLDWIDE	* Department			iens Activ *	All		Ap	oly	
	tted Profiles	🗐 💣 Detach	Manage Columns									
	and he shares	_	Manage Columns cation Level	Season	Escalatio	n Level	Submitted	Submitted	Size Pro			
ction	s = View = 0 [	Le	I CONTRACTOR	Season Spring 2016	Escalatio		Submitted	Submitted 08/12/21	\$	м	L (5)	XL
ction: 76	s * View * O [ Merchandise Level	La	cation Level			TION	Submitted		\$ 60% \$		0% L	0% XL
ction: 76	s = View = O ( Merchandise Level Class-Active Apparel	14	cation Level	Spring 2016	CL5/LOCA	тюч том	Submitted	08/12/21	\$ 60% \$ 60% \$	M 40% M 40% M	0% L 0% L	0% XL 0% XL
ction: 76 69 68	s = View = O ( Merchandise Level Class-Active Apparel Style-BABY BOOT PAINT	Lo Lo Lo	cation Level cation-Somerville cation-Somerville	Spring 2016 Spring 2016	CL5/LOCA SBC/LOCA	TION TION DCT	Submitted	08/12/21	\$ 60% \$ 60% \$ 34% \$	M 40% M 40% M 41% M	0% L 0% L 25% L	0% XL 0% XL 0% XL
ction: 76 69 68	s • View • 0 ( Merchandise Level Class-Active Apparel Style-BABY BOOT PANT Sub Class-Capri Sants	(4   6   6   6	cation Level cation-Somerville cation-Somerville cation-Kansas City	Spring 2016 Spring 2016 Spring 2016	CLS/LOCA SBC/LOCA CLS/DISTR	TION ITION INCT	Submitted	08/12/21 08/12/21 08/12/21	\$ 60% \$ 60% \$ 34% \$ 34% \$ 34%	M 40% M 40% M 41% M 41% M	0% L 0% L 25% L 25% L	0% XL 0% XL 0% XL 0% XL
uction: 176 169 167 166	Wiew +     O       Merchandise Level       Class-Active Apparel       Style-BABY BOOT RANT       Sub Class-Capri Pants       Class-Active Apparel       Style-Capri Pants       Style-Capri	[4 [4 [4 [4 [4] [4] [4] [4] [4] [4] [4]	cation Level cation-Somenville cation-Kansas City cation-Kansas City cation-Kansas City	Spring 2016 Spring 2016 Spring 2016 Spring 2016 Spring 2016	CLS/LOCA SBC/LOCA CLS/DISTR CLS/DISTR	TION TION NCT NCT	Submitted	08/12/21 08/12/21 08/12/21 08/12/21 08/12/21	\$ 60% \$ 60% \$ 34% \$ 34%	M 40% M 40% M 41% M 41%	0% L 0% L 25% L 25%	0% XL 0% XL 0% XL 0% XL
bmit Action: 376 369 366 366 365	•     View •     O     [       Merchandise Level     Class-Active Apparel       Style-Baßty BOOT PANT       Sub Class-Capit Sants       Class-Active Apparel	[4 [4 [4 [4 [4] [4] [4] [4] [4] [4] [4]	cation Level cation-Somerville cation-Kansas City cation-Kansas City	Spring 2016 Spring 2016 Spring 2016 Spring 2016	CLS/LOCA SBC/LOCA CLS/DISTR CLS/DISTR	TION TION NCT NCT	Submitted	08/12/21 08/12/21 08/12/21 08/12/21	\$ 60% \$ 60% \$ 34% \$ 34% \$ 34% \$	M 40% M 40% M 41% M 41% M 41%	0% L 0% L 25% L 25% L 25%	0% XL 0% XL 0% XL 0%



# 9 Innovation Workbench

Innovation Workbench (IW) is a service that enables you to access read-only data using Oracle APEX and implement algorithms and analytics as an extension. This extension is a workbench for advanced analytics users that can be used to add new implementations via Oracle Advanced Analytic (Oracle R/ODM) algorithms that are implemented as SQL/PLSQL functions.

Innovation Workbench allocates a workspace to a retailer. This is a logical work area that is associated with a pre-allocated retailer database schema.

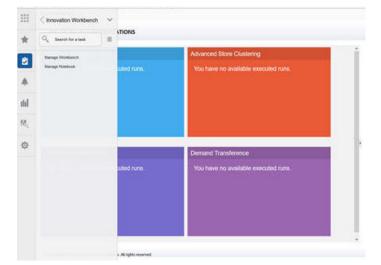


Figure 9-1 Accessing Innovation Workbench

# **Process**

To access the workbench, in the Task menu shown in Figure 9-1, click **Innovation Workbench.** You see a list of workspaces in a new browser tab that are pre-allocated to the retailers you have access to.

### Workspace List

The Workspace List displays all the workspaces that you were initially assigned to when workspaces were created at the time of installation and configuration. You can select a workspace from the list to review database objects using Oracle Application Express, shown in Figure 9-2.



Figure 9-2 Oracle Application Expre
-------------------------------------

trator
1

Figure 9-3 shows the Oracle APEX workspace, which displays SQL Workshop and App Builder.

#### Figure 9-3 Oracle APEX Workspace

App Builder		SQL Workshop
Top Users		News and Messages
DS dsanalyst	2	
Sp space_planner_user	1	
	(DS) dsanalyst	Top Users

# SQL Workshop

The SQL Workshop shown in Figure 9-4 provides tools to view and manage database objects.



#### Figure 9-4 SQL Workshop

		internal of	2017 2017 OL	Jes .
Object Browser	SQL Commands	SQL S	Scripts	Utilities
Recently Created Tables			Recent SQL Comma	nds
DM\$PISL_DT_CHURN_MODEL		13 days ago	select unique churn_sco	ore from CIS
DM\$PYSL_DT_CHURN_MODEL		13 days ago	DECLARE P_ID NUMBER	BEGIN
SYS_IOT_OVER_22885513		13 days ago	select * from rse_log_m	sg;
DM\$PZSL_DT_CHURN_MODEL		13 days ago	DECLARE P_ID NUMBER	BEGIN
DM\$PXSL_DT_CHURN_MODEL		13 days ago	select * from rse_log_m	sg;
DM\$PWSL_DT_CHURN_MODEL		13 days ago	DECLARE P_ID NUMBER	BEGIN
DM\$PVSL_DT_CHURN_MODEL		13 days ago	DECLARE P_ID NUMBER	¢ BEGIN

The Object Browser shown in Figure 9-5 lets you to use a tree control to view object properties and create new objects. The read-only database objects that are aggregated and cleansed are available for you to review and organize for data mining. Figure 9-4 shows the schema associated with the Retailer Workspace schema.



#### Figure 9-5 Contextual Area

Synonyms 🗸	
<b>۹</b> (6)	
KSE_PKOD_ATIK_GKP	*
RSE_PROD_ATTR_GRP_VALUE	
RSE_PROD_ATTR_GRP_VALUE_MAP	
RSE_PROD_ATTR_GRP_VALUE_VALUE	
RSE_PROD_HIER	
RSE_PROD_HIER_TC	
RSE_PROD_LOC_STATUS	
RSE_PROD_SRC_XREF	
RSE_PROD_TC	
RSE_RET_LC_WK_A	
RSE_SLS_LC_WK_A	
RSE_SLS_PH_LC_WK_A	
RSE_SLS_PR_LC_CS_WK	
RSE_SLS_PR_LC_WK	
RSE_SLS_PR_WK_A	E
RSE_SLS_TXN	
W_PARTY_ATTR_D	
W_PARTY_PER_D	-

You can use the SQL Commands tool to enter ad-hoc SQL. The Query Builder can be used to create join queries using drag and drop. Figure 9-6 shows how to execute the ad hoc PL/SQL block.

Figure 9-6 SQL Commands

	SQL Commands			Scher	na RETWSP_QA_1	<b>v</b> ()
I	Autocommit Rows	10	✓ ③ Clear Command Find T	ables		Save Ru
BEGI	<pre>DD NUMBER; N DBMS_OUTPUT.ENABLE gbms_output.put_in P_ID := 0; P_ODY_MODEL.P_CHENN P_ID &gt;&gt; P_ID ); gbms_output.put_line(')</pre>	ne('Churn Model Proces NODEL( Churn Model Process en				
	wner 💮 - All Users - 🔹 🚿	Find ⑦	Rows		De	
						lete Checked
	Owner	Name	Description	SQL	Updated By	lete Checked Updated



The SQL Scripts shown in Figure 9-7 can be used to store and run scripts. Use the Data Workshop to load and unload text, DDL, and spreadsheet data.

Figure 9-7 SQL Scripts

🔿 sqi	L Scripts										
Q~	1	Go	Actions Y			Dele	te Checked	Upload >	Create >	Tasks	
	Edit	Owner	Name	Created	Updated By	Updated ↓ <i>≣</i>	Bytes	Results	Run	Manage Results	
-										Show Quotas	
	0	SPACE_PLANNER_USER	Call Churn Model	5 weeks ago	SPACE_PLANNER_USER	5 weeks ago	275		7 🕑	Export	
									1 - 1	Import	

Use RESTful Services to manage web service definitions declaratively using SQL Query and to test the service modules from the web browser. Figure 9-8 shows a list of RESTful service modules.

Figure 9-8 RESTful Services

Q~	Go	80	E	Actions ~				Reset	Create >	About	
Module Name ↑=		U	JRI Prefi	ix.	Privilege	Status	Updated By	Up	dated	RESTful Services allow for t declarative specification of	F
rase.customer.analytics	cu	stseg/			Rest privileges	Published	space_planner_user		5 weeks ago	RESTful services mapped to and PL/SQL. Each RESTful	
rase.customer.retention	ch	ummod	del/		Rest privileges	Published	space_planner_user		5 weeks ago	Service is called a module a identifies a URI prefix. Each	
										templates. Learn More	
										Learn More	
										Learn More Tasks	
										Learn More Tasks RESTful Service Privileges	

You can create a new RESTful Service module by clicking **Create** and setting the resource handler with a query or an anonymous PL/SQL block responsible for handling a particular HTTP method.

Figure 9-9 Resource Handler

orase.customer.retention	Resource Handler: GET		Cancel	Delete	Apply Change
@ segment	Resource Handler: GET		Cancel	Delete	Apply Change
GET	A resource handler is a query or an anonymous PL/SQL block reso	nsible for handling a particular HTTP method. Although multiple resource handlers can be defi	ned for a resource template, only o	one resource	e handler per HT
+ Create Handler	method is permitted.				
+ Create Template	RESTful Service Module:	churnmodel/			
	URI Template:	segment.			
	Method	GET ~ 🕥			
	Source Type	Query V 🕥			
	Format	JSON Y			
	Requires Secure Access	Yes 🗸 🔿			
	Pagination Size				
	Source				
	* Source ③				
	$\mathfrak{O} \ \mathbb{C} \ \mathbb{Q} \ \leftrightarrow \ \mathbb{A}^{*}$				
	1 SILUCT PARMY, NODE, 1 NODE, 3 RECORD, COUNT, 4 PREDICTON, 5 LOCAL, RANDAT, 6 LOCAL, RANDAT,				
	7 FULL STIPLE RULE 8 FROM RES TREE CHURN MODEL				



APEX SQL Workshop Guide is available at <a href="http://docs.oracle.com/database/apex-5.1/AEUTL/toc.htm">http://docs.oracle.com/database/apex-5.1/AEUTL/toc.htm</a>

# **Application Builder**

Application Builder is a development environment that you can use to build and deploy database-centric applications. You can create interactive grids, reports, and charts.

APEX App Builder User's Guide is available at http://docs.oracle.com/database/ apex-5.1/HTMDB/toc.htm

You can use wizards to declaratively assemble database applications organized by page to visualize and explore data, as a pre-process or post-process of data mining.

The following functionality is available.

#### Create

Launches the Create Application Wizard, which you can use to build a complete application containing multiple pages.

#### Import

Launches the Import Wizard, which you can use to import export files from the export repository.

#### Dashboard

Links to the App Builder Dashboard, which displays metrics about applications in the current workspace.

#### **Workspace Utilities**

Use the Workspace Utilities page to manage App Builder Defaults, news items displayed on the home page, workspace themes, and so on.

# Manage Notebook

Data scientists can use the Innovation Workbench Notebook to create notebooks, which are collections of documentation, snippets of code, and visualizations. These notebooks are bundled with key python modules for machine learning, data mining, natural language processing, network analysis, and optimization solvers. Interactive graph visualization is available that supports highlighting, expansion, and applying filters. Custom paragraphs for advanced graph visualization concepts such as visual graph creation and large graph visualization concepts are supported. This powerful widget concept allows the analyst to curate data into a form that is easier to understand, highlights trends and outliers, and shares reports with business.

### Features

The key features of Manage Notebook include:

- Create, import, export, and clone python notebooks
- Browse, filter, and search for Notebooks.
- Add comments from the user interface (UI)



- Visualize data in the form of a Graph Visualization.
- Use collection of Python Libraries bundled with the product
  - Machine Learning packages such as (Tensorflow, Mxnet and Keras) Analyze
  - Optimization Solvers such as Gurobi

To access Python Notebook, click Innovation Workbench **Manage Notebook**. This opens a new tab in the browser and all the notebooks in the workspace are displayed.

Figure 9-10 Manage Notebook

***	< Innovation Workbench		
*	🔍 Search for a task	TIONS	
	Manage Workbench		Advanced Store Clustering
	Manage Notebook	suted runs.	You have no available executed runs.
Ŵ	Manage Notebook		
ıtıl			
80,			
錼			
			Demand Transference
		cuted runs.	You have no available executed runs.

From the workspace, you can import or export notebooks, create new workbooks, or copy notebooks. You can also browse, filter, and search for Notebooks using either a name or tags.

Figure 9-11 Notebook Functionality

Notebooks			Deats Python O Notebook
7ger to march	Home Filter by name		8 Å I
The set of Call	ret (month) (page-month) (protogram (m) (many) (prot) (prot	(i) geboo interpreter to	et) sinn han laubden (vg) Export/Imp. Notebook
Filter by tags	Name	Author	Tags
	Getting Started		
Q	Gurobi Python implementation of Gurobi (1)	orear1	gurobi pythan
Q	JDBC RDC call of or store procedure using plug ₩ (2) ♦ (1)	preset.	at jak play provider at
q	Matplotilb Python Marpholib Python \$ (2)	over1	(magdattà) (python)
q	Monet (1)	orasie1	
C	Networks: Networks andam geometric graph. $\Phi$ (1)	o(ase1	graph networks

You can create a notebook and add paragraphs using the toolbar. These paragraphs can be Python, JDBC, Markdown, or graph analytics paragraphs. You can execute paragraphs



individually and see the results at the bottom of each paragraph. You can also execute all the paragraphs from the toolbar provided at the top.

 
 Click
 Click

 Click
 Craph Visualization, view data using various chart

 Image: Click
 Craph Visualization, view data using various chart

 Image: Click
 Craph Visualization, view data using various chart

 Image: Click
 Craph Visualization, view data using various chart

 Image: Click
 Click

 Image: Click
 Craph Visualization, view data using various chart

 Image: Click
 Craph Visualization, view data using various chart

 Image: Click
 Craph Visualization, view data using various chart

 Image: Click
 Craph Visualization, view data using various chart

 Image: Click
 Craph Visualization, view data using various chart

 Image: Click
 Craph Visualization, view data using various chart

 Image: Click
 Craph Visualization, view data using various chart

 Image: Click
 Click

 <

Figure 9-12 Notebook - Adding Paragraphs

You can associate tags with the Notebook; these tags can be used for filtering and browsing the notebooks.

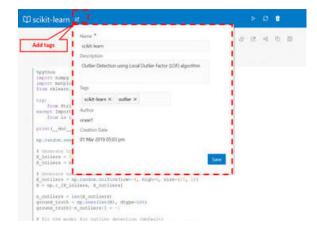
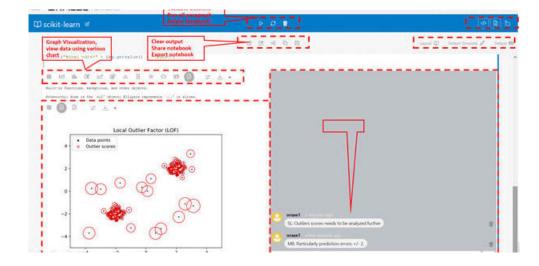


Figure 9-13 Notebook Tags

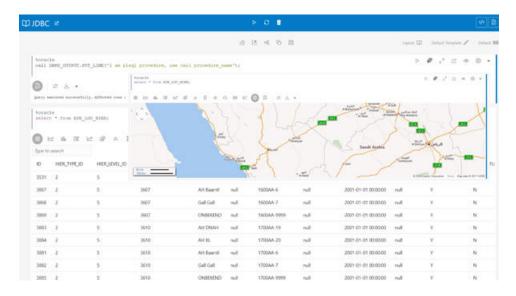
You can also add comments to the paragraphs and manage them from the user interface (UI). The comments can then be shared with others as a PDF. The Comments view shows all paragraph comments. You can visualize data in the form of a Graph Visualization and Exploration. You can explore graphs visually from within the notebook by viewing a summary of graphs or by using interactive exploration such as dragging, hovering, filtering, highlighting, and setting visualization properties. Different types of charts and graphs can be used for different types of datasets such as Line, Tag-Cloud, Tree Map, Scatter Plot, and so on.



#### Figure 9-14 Notebook Comments

You can visualize data in the form of a map and configure a column from a dataset to represent the latitude, longitude, title, and description.

#### Figure 9-15 Notebook Data as a Map





# 10 Oracle Digital Assistance

Oracle Digital Assistance (ODA) is a NLP and Machine Learning-based cloud service that enables application-specific interactions. It is a virtual user that assists end users with complex engagements using transactional data to review key business insights and exceptions. It also provides out-of-the-box knowledge sharing by responding to typical Q&Astyle questions for customer service and support. ODA features are supported using voice along with conversational interface to distill end user intents, invoke actions, and provide reasonable responses. This enhances consulting services with minimal training and support.

Digital assistance is not a replacement for a web application but a channel that allows the user to complete context-driven tasks using a combination of text messages, voice, and simple UI.

Digital assistance supports Transactional bots and Q&A bots.

This chapter describes how to use digital assistance. Digital Assistance in the Retail Science Platform is displayed in the Contextual area of each module.

# **Transactional Digital Assistance**

Transactional digital assistance helps with business engagements by using transactional data to review business insights, rules, and exceptions. This assistant completes tasks and helps the end user navigate to specific tasks in the application. The data source for these bots is the Retail Science Platform Database. They rely on NLP or Machine Learning to determine user intent.

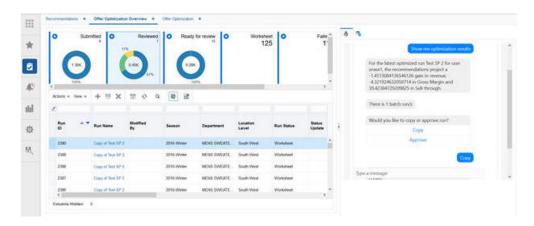


Figure 10-1 Transactional Digital Assistance

# **Q&A Digital Assistance**

Q&A digital assistance helps answer general interest questions by returning one or more question and answer pairs. It helps the user find FAQs or other knowledge-based documents.



The data source of these bots is pre-loaded CSV. They rely on Elastic Search to determine user intent.

Figure 10-2	Q&A D	Digital	Assistance
-------------	-------	---------	------------

• •	ornatted O	Reviewed	o Ready	tor review 0	Worksty 12	eet 0 25	Fale 1			4 (1
C 105		- in								Demetions
Atom + Veu +	+ 11 X	m o q	2						Can Offer Optimization han complex promotions?	
Run -	Run Name	Modified By	Season	Department	Location Level	Rue Status	Status Update	÷	simple primeriors, that is to down rest facility complex provides the BOGO	
2990	Cray of Rest SP 2		2016.Weter	BENS SWEATE	South West	Worksheet		4	View	
2349	Copy of Text SP 3		2016 Weter	MENS SWEATE.	Smath West	Worksheet			(Mice Acounts) (Cologe	-
2368	Copy of Task SP 2		2255-Weter	MORE SWEATE	South West	Worksheet				
2367	Grass of first SP 3		2016-Wetter	MENS SWEATE.	South West	Worksheet			free a manage	
2386	Great feet 1972	_	2010-Weter	MENS SWEATE	South West	Worksheart				
Columna Hiddan										

Digital Assistance appears in the Contextual Area and has the components described in Table 10-1.

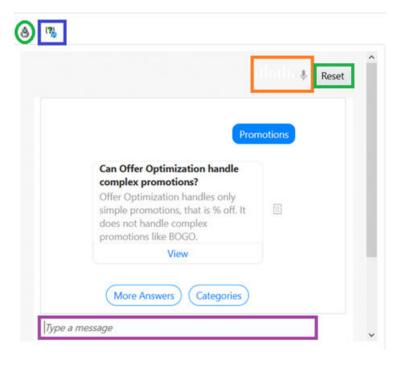


Figure 10-3 Digital Assistance Contextual Area



#### Table 10-1 Interface Components

lcon	Description
(6)	Access transaction bots by clicking the bot icon in the contextual area.
(3)	Access Q&A bots by clicking the question icon in the contextual area.
Reset	Reset the context of the bots by clicking the reset icon.
iliniti ș	Access voice component by clicking the microphone icon. If voice is enabled, the bar color next to the microphone icon will be become orange and will animate. When user speaks, the content is typed in the message window.
Type a message	User can type message and click Enter.

Both of these bots can have voice enabled by clicking on microphone icon. To enable voice, complete the steps described in Voice Component .

# Voice Component

Voice support for ODA is only available in Chrome.

#### **Enabling the Microphone in Chrome**

Chrome requires permission to enable the Microphone for all URLs (for example, https:// <hostname>:<port>).

The process for adding or enabling Microphone differs in different versions of Chrome. Here are the recommended steps. The https mode is recommended.

https://<hostname>:<port>/orase/faces/Home

1. Click dot in the top right corner to check the settings. This opens a new tab in the browser.



Figure 10-4 Click Dots

	Submitted	Reviewed 0.0	Ready 1     115	or testes 0	Workshee 1		Î	T.	
0.0	)		Same						
Athins + V			2 <b>7</b> 2		-	1	i.	How can I help you with Offer Optimization	2
1			- LLI					Application	
tun 10	+ 👻 Run Name	Modified By	Season	Department	Location Local	Run Status			
1221	Allanda	OOSupetiae	2017 Summer	monant-Active -	Company	Reaty for revenue			
1220	Altheat	005uperViser	2017 Summer	Visionens Active	Consulty	Faind	8		
1201	hear heat		2017 Summer	Vioneta Active	US Eastern Rag	Workphere			
1200	ABTIM2	008uper/ser	2017 Summer	Immere Active	Conpany	Ready for review			
1192	Grav, CK, See	N	2017 Summer	Homens Active	Company	Name for course			
1042	and Soul	O'Clin contribut	1017 5	Westmann & State	Comment	Faired			

2. Type **microphone** in the search text box.

Figure 10-5 Search for Microphone

Settings	Q, executive	•	
	4 Microphone		
	Microphone Array (Nealisk Auf 🛩		
	Ask before accessing (recommended)	-	
	Birch		
	No other added		
	Alten		
	C https://www.google.com/443		
	C Projutiocalituat 7101		
	6 Mage / Www.google.com.443 Current transpiro exector		
	D Mtgs./bu/64302.ws.oraulie.com/29003 Connect tocognite season		
	Khtps://shtps/10.152-43-45 undiricp.org/decorp.com/7162     Guarant Instrugetion Section		

3. If the application URL is not added to allow section, then follow steps 4 through 7. No setup is required for voice enablement. Make sure that pop-ups are not blocked for the URL.



€ = @ (● Oxome   ifeome//sett	ings Content/popular Namith-pop		\$
≣ Settings	9. m	۰	
	E Pop-ups and redirects		
	Allowed		
	Book	Add	
	No sites added		
	Atlan	A44	
	No alter added		

Figure 10-6 Allow Pop-Ups

4. Click **Microphone**. If the URL is allowed, you will see voice animation next to the yellow button when you speak. You are prompted to click Allow to enable voice. Click **Allow** or complete the following steps.

Figure 10-7 Click Microphone

	Altra	met 0.0	O Ready I	to review 0	Workshee 15		16		1.1070
Com Com	)		Corr						1.4
Actions + Ve	•• + 0 ×	2 o 0	a 🝸 92					How can I help you with Offer Optimization Application	
1									
Ratio	* * Run Nama	Mudified By	Season	Department	Location Lavel	Run Statue	-		
1221	Alleret	OOSuperiner	2017 Summer	Thomas Active.	Company	Ready for revenue	1		
1220	Altheat	005iger\3w	2017 Summer	Woners Active	Conserv	Faire	1		
1201	beau test		2017 Summer	Womens Active -	Uti Eastern Reg.	Morksheet			
4200	Altheot	009uperUser	3017 Burnter	monete Aztive	Company	Heads for resident			
1162	0.00 (C 10010)		2017 Summer	Nonera Active .	Congura	Really for more s			
1141	All live	(Cherentine	2017 Australia	Version Action	Correction	Faire			
Columnity History									

- 5. The browser enables the button in the top right corner for permission. When asked if the URL should access the microphone, click **Allow**.
- 6. If above steps do not work, try using incognito mode by pressing Ctrl + Shift + N. When asked if <URL> want to access your microphone, reload the page.



0	nmej O	Reviewed 0.0	Ready to     sthere	r neview a	Workshee 15			•	Manghole O Always block mesognore access Monophone Default - Moophone
() O OK					_	Ι,			(linto)
Activities - View -	+ 9 x	m o o	¥ <b>▼</b> ≌					How can thelp y Application!	oo with Offer Optimization
PP-1									
Run a T	Run Name	Modified By	Server	Department	Location Level	Run Status	1		inidot Triday wity you need some
		Nodified By OOSuperiser	Samon 2017 Summer		Lecation Lavel	Run Status			lestand you I am not human
Rus + •				Department	Level	Run Status		Sony I don't und	lestand you I am not human
Run	Athens	008-periter	2017 Summer	Department Womens Active	Constanty	Run Status Ready to review	•	Sony I don't und	lestand you I am not human
Run	Actives Altreact	008-periter	2017 Summer 2017 Summer	Department Womens Active Womens Active	Company Company	Run Status Ready to review Fallet		Sony I don't und	lestand you I am not human
Run ***	Attract Altract Branket	005xperiner 005xperiner	2017 Summer 2017 Summer 2017 Summer	Department Womens Active Womens Active	Company Company 128 Eastern Hag	Run Status Ready for review Falled Worksheet		Sony I don't und	lestand you I am not human

Figure 10-8 Incognito Mode

7. Make sure the pop-up is not blocked and click Allow. Voice will be enabled.

& Use your moto		neck 0.0	O Ready!	for services .	Workshee 15		Î	• •	
() (and	)	1	30%				Ц		<b>▲</b>
Actions = Ver	• + u ×	200	<b>T</b> 2		-	1	ell	(tells) How card I help you with Offer Optimization Application	
1								Alexant	
Run - D	· Run Nama	Modified By	Season	Department	Location Level	Run Status			
1221	Advent	OOhipenitiet	2017 Summer	Visimena Active	Company	Ready for mome	1		
1220	Altino	00bae/ter	2017 Summer	Vometa Active	Company	Faiet			
1201	terms level		2017 Summer	Vitimens Active	Uk Earlern Hag	Worksheet			
1000	AB1442	OOSupether	2017 Burrow	Woosens Active	Company	Nextly for revenue			
1192	Des OLIMAN		2017 Summer	Victoria Artive	Company	Ready for revenue			
1181 + 55	At the	(COScore) her	2017 5	Version Actor	Conserv	Fairet	÷		
Columna History									

Figure 10-9 Voice Enabled

# 11 Control & Tactical Center

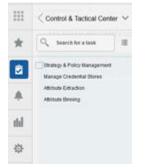
Using the Control & Tactical Center, a user can access Strategy & Policy Management. This is the central place for managing the configurations of different applications and for setting up and configuring the demand forecasting runs.

In addition, a user can access the modules for managing product attributes (Attribute Extraction and Attribute Binning) as well as the link for managing web service-related credentials under the Control & Tactical Center.

Depending on the role, a user will see one or multiple of the following links, as shown in Figure 11-1. The administrator user will have access to all of the links.

- Strategy and Policy Management
- Manage Credential Stores
- Attribute Extraction
- Attribute Binning

#### Figure 11-1 Control and Tactical Center



# Strategy & Policy Management

In Strategy & Policy Management, a user can edit the configurations of different applications via the Manage System Configurations functionality. In this screen, the tables can be filtered by applications.

To edit a row in any table, click the row and click the **Edit** icon. You can override the values for the columns that are editable.

Use the Manage Forecast Configurations to set up, manage, and configure the demand forecasting runs for different applications such as Retail Demand Forecasting (RDF), Offer Optimization (OO), Inventory Optimization (IO), Merchandise Financial Planning (MFP), and Assortment Planning (AP).



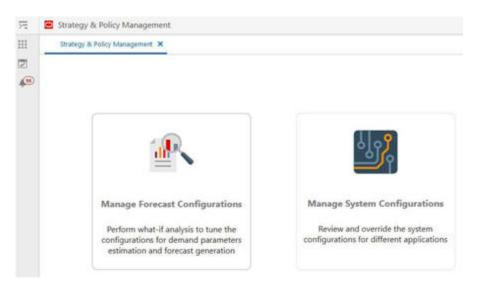


Figure 11-2 Strategy & Policy Management Dashboard

Figure 11-3 Manage System Configurations

	Strategy 8	a Policy Management					्, 🚊 onaset म	_		
	Strategy & Roscy	Wasagement 🕷 🛛 Manage System D	edgesters ×							
0	Application Science Global	Configurations =	Table RSE_CON	no	•	Description: This table contains configuration names and their values for various settings which operation of the suftware	an be changed to affec	1.10		
	the podde	4								
	Actions *	Vev *   + / =   0	E d' Detach							
	APPL_CODE	PARAM, NAME	PARAM_VALUE	CONFIGURABLE FLG	DESCR		UPDATEABLE FLG			
	RSE	ASE, BO, SW, PROD, HER, LPVEL	4	N	Product hierarchy law	of used by Base Dervard for calculating Store Weights. Generally, Subclass level,				
	458	RSE_BD_PROD_HER_PRINT_LEVEL	5	N	Product hierarchy pa PRO_PROD_HIER_PR	rent level used by Base Demand. It must match the Product PROCESSING level in Offer Optimization: OCESSING_UV. This is used in retrieving Price Basticity.				
	RSE	RSE,80,PROD,HILR,LEVIL	ł.,	N		el used by Sale Dervand, it must match the Product RECOMMENDATION level in Offer Optimizations (ER_UV_D). This is the level of the Product Hierarchy at which Sales Data will be apprepried and is scientific Once data.				
	ASA.	RSE_BD_PROD_HER_TYPE	8	N		er used by Race Demand, Extended Product Hierarchy.				
	нŧ	RSE_PRO_PROD_HER_RETURN_UVL	5	Y	Merchandlos Nerarch	ty level at which IHO will consume return coefficients.	н			
	R58.	ADDS_POSLOG_PROD_HER_TYPE	1	N	The product Nevarch	y type used to load point of sales data.	٧			
	852	ADDS, DEAL, PROD_HER, TVTN	1	N	The product Neverth	ty type used to load deals data.	¥.			
	RSE	RSE,WOD_PROD_HER,UVS	£:	N	The product hierarch	y level at which exerther driven demand data is sent.				
	RSZ	PROD_HER_SISTON_HER_LEVEL_D	4			offers the hierarchy level at which sales transactions are provided (7-35yle, 8-5tyle/color or 8-5tyle/color the extended hierarchy leaf level				

# Manage Forecast Configurations

This section describes the workflow and screens in Manage Forecast Configurations. With this functionality, you can set up and manage the forecast run types and forecast runs for different applications.

You can access Manage Forecast Configurations from the Strategy & Policy Management dashboard under the Control & Tactical Center.

#### **Forecast Run Type**

The Forecast Run Type is the high-level template for forecast runs. Each run type has certain attributes that must be specified when the run type is being created. All configuration parameters default to the system default value when the run type is



created. Use the Manage screen to modify the value of the configuration parameters for the run types.

#### **Forecast Run**

Forecast runs are created for a specific run type and are considered instances of the run type. The forecast run shares all the attributes of the run type and by default will have system default values for all configuration parameters. These parameters can be modified when a new run is being created in the Test screen.

### Overview

The typical workflow for setting up run types, runs, and configuring the parameters is outlined in this section. Each step is described in detail in the sections that follow.

**1.** Create a run type in the Setup screen.

If the aggregation status of the run type is Not Started, start the aggregation.

- 2. Create a run in the Test screen and override the configuration parameters as desired. Then submit the run.
- 3. Once the run is successfully completed, review the summary of outputs by clicking the Summary link next to the run. This feature is available only if the run uses the Causal forecast method.

#### Note:

you can create as many runs as desired. These are considered what-if runs and allow you to experiment with different values for configuration parameters and examine the impact on the estimated demand parameters.

4. Set the configuration parameters for the run type in the Manage screen. This will determine the values that should be used in all subsequent batch runs for the given run type.

At the end of the implementation process, activate the run type to indicate that the run type should be part of the weekly batch process. During the weekly batch, a new run is created for each active run type.

5. Create a mapping between the run type and the application using the Map screen.

### Setup

In the Setup screen in train stop 1, shown in Figure 11-4, you can see the overview table of the existing run types and create new run types. In addition to Run Type Name, Run Type Description, Created On, and Created By, the table shows the following information about the run type.



#### Figure 11-4 Run Types

	0	0		0		(4)	
Setup		Test		Manag		Mag	
orec	ast Run Types						
Actio	nt • View • + X	2 D V L Detach	Start D	uta Aggregation Add Multiple	e Run Types		
	Run Type Name C	Run Type Description	Status 0	Aggregation Status 0	Cumulative Aggregation Status	Forecast Intersection	
1268	Run Type Name C MerchPlan_RegPrSkAmt	Run Type Description C merchandise plan; regular and prom		Aggregation Status © Complete - 29711 rows	Cumulative Aggregation Status 0 Not Applicable	Forecast Intersection Sub Class-Area-Week	
		merchandise plan; regular and prom				Sub Class-Area-Week	
267	MerchPlan_RegPrSkAmt	merchandise plan; regular and prom location plan; total return amount	Inactive	Complete - 29711 rows	Not Applicable	Sub Class-Area-Week Department-Location-V	
1267 1262	MerchPlan_RegPrSIsAmt LocPlan_TotRetAmt	merchandise plan; regular and prom location plan; total return amount location target; total return unit	Inactive Inactive	Complete - 29711 rows Complete - 67876 rows	Not Applicable Not Applicable	Forecast Intersection C Sub Class-Area-Week Department-Location-Wee Company-Location-Wee Company-Location-Wee	

#### **Run Type Status**

The Status column in the run type overview table shows whether the run type is Active or Inactive. Active run types become part of the weekly batch process, and a new batch run is created and executed for each active run type. Run types can be activated in the Manage screen (train stop 3).

#### **Aggregation Status**

The Aggregation Status column in the run type overview table shows whether the data aggregation for the run type is Not Started, In Progress, or Complete. Instances of runs can be generated for a run type (in the Test screen in train stop 2) only if the aggregation is complete.

#### **Cumulative Aggregation Status**

The Cumulative Aggregation Status column in the run type overview table shows whether the cumulative data aggregation for the run type is Not Started, In Progress, or Complete. Cumulative data aggregation is only applicable for run types with forecast method Causal-Short Life Cycle.

#### **Forecast Intersection**

The Forecast Intersection column in the run type overview table shows the merchandise-location-calendar intersection for which the forecast is generated. The intersection includes price zone and/or customer segment if the run type has those dimensions.

#### Applications

The Applications column in the run type overview table shows the application(s) that the run type is mapped to. You can map run types and applications in the Map screen in train stop 4.

#### **External Application Key**

The External Application Key column in the Run Type Overview table shows whether the external application run type key is not yet assigned to the assigned external key. You can assign the external application key for a run type (in the Map screen in train stop 4) only if the mapped application is to Retail Demand Forecasting.



# Create a Run Type

To create a new run type, click the + (plus) icon above the run type overview table. In the Create Run Type pop-up, as shown in Figure 11-5, you must specify the value for the following fields.

Figure 11-5 Create Run Type

75	🗧 Strategy & Policy Management					
=	Drangy & Policy Usingament, N					
2	Create Run Type					
æ	Run Type Name *					
	Run Type Description					
	Forecast Method *	Cause - Long Life Cycle * Total Gross Sales Amount *				
	forecast Measure *					
	Oeta Source *	Store Sales		-		
	Porecast by Customer Segments	0		amona lagoarta	Selected Customer Segments	NA
	Forecast by Price Zone	Ol See 3		Ione Groups	Selected Zone Groups	N/A
	Porecast Level - Merchandise	Company				
	Porecast Level - Location *	Company				
	Forecast sevel - Calendar *	thees				
	Spread Porecast to Day level					
	Spread Profile Level - Merchandise *	dampary .		1.0		
	Spread Profile Level - Location *	Consers				
	Spread Profile Level - Calendar *	Day				

#### **Run Type Name**

This is a unique name and must be less than 30 characters. The run type name is used as an identifier when the forecast output is exported to other applications.

#### **Forecast Method**

A forecast method must be specified for each run type. All the runs created for the run type will use the selected forecast method. The methods that are currently supported are Causal-Long Life Cycle, Causal-Short Life Cycle, and Automatic Exponential Smoothing. The forecast method must be chosen based on the specific use case and application.

#### **Forecast Measure**

This determines the measure that will be used as input by the forecasting algorithm. The final forecast will be generated for this measure. For the Causal- Short Life Cycle and Causal-Long Life Cycle methods, the supported measures are gross sales amount/unit and net sales amount/unit. For the Automatic Exponential Smoothing method, the forecast can be generated for other measures such as clearance sales and regular and promotion sales.

#### **Data Source**

This determines which data will be used as input to the selected forecast method. The source that is currently supported is the store sales.



#### **Customer Segment**

Select Forecast by Customer Segments to generate the forecast by the merchandise/ location/segment. If you turn on the switch, you must also click the button next to it in order to select one or multiple customer segments. It is recommended that you only select the segments that you want the forecast to be generated for (that is, un-select inactive segments) as this will make the data aggregation and forecast generation processes more efficient. Forecast by Customer Segment is applicable only for the Causal- Short Life Cycle method.

#### **Price Zone Group**

Select the Forecast by Price Zone to generate the forecast by merchandise/location/ price zone. If you turn on the switch you must also click the button next to it in order to select one or multiple zone groups. It is recommended that you only select the zone groups that you want the forecast to be generated for (that is, un-select inactive zone groups) as this will make the data aggregation and forecast generation processes more efficient. Forecast by price zone is applicable only for Causal- Short Life Cycle method.

#### Forecast Level- Merchandise/Location/Calendar

Select the intersection that you want the forecast to be generated at. This will also determine the level at which sales data will be aggregated and flow through the various stages of forecasting. If you turn on the Forecast by Price Zone, the location level defaults to a level at the top of the location hierarchy. (This level is configurable and is determined by PMO\_MIN\_LOC\_HIER\_PROCESSING\_LVL in the RSE\_CONFIG table.)

#### Spread Profile Level — Merchandise/Location/Calendar

You can turn on the switch for the Spread Forecast to Day level only if the Forecast Level – Calendar is Week. Select the Spread Forecast Level for Merchandise/ Location/Calendar only after turning on the switch for the Spread Forecast to Day level.

# Data Aggregation

After you create a run type, you can see the aggregation status in the run type overview table. If the new run type has the same merchandise-location-calendar intersection as an existing run type, the aggregation status will be shown as complete as soon as you create the new run type because the data aggregation at that intersection has already been completed. This is applicable only for the run types that do not have a price zone and/or customer segment dimension. For the run types that do have a price zone and/or customer segment dimension, data aggregation must be done for each run type separately.

If any run type has an aggregation status of Not Started, click the **Start Data Aggregation** button above the run type overview table. This opens a pop-up where you can see a list of run types for which the aggregation process has not yet started, as shown in Figure 11–8. You can select one or multiple run types from the top and/or bottom section in the pop-up and click **Submit** to start data aggregation. The Cumulative Aggregation process will be started once the aggregation process is submitted. It is only applicable for run types with forecast method Causal-Short Life Cycle.



# Add Multiple Run Types

Click on the **Add Multiple Run Types** button. It will open a tab with a table consisting of available templates to create multiple run types at a time, as shown in Figure 11–6. If the Enable column value is Y and Process Flag column is null, then the corresponding row will be considered for creating run type. Click on the **Create Run Types** button to create multiple run types.

Click on + icon to add new process ids to the table, as shown in Figure 11–7. Select rows from the table and click on X icon to delete process ids. User can also edit parameters within each row if Process Flag is null. Click on Save button to save the changes.

Actions •	Wew • + × 2 0	Detach Save					
	Run Type Name 🗢	Run Type Description 🗢	Forecast Level - Merchandise	0	Forecast Level - Location	0	Forecast
1	LocPlan_TotSisUnit	location plan; total sales c	Department	*.	Location	*: -	Wee
2	LocPlan_TotSIsAmt	location plan; total sales a	Department	*	Location		Wee
5	LocPlan_TotRetUnit	location plan; total return	Department	*	Location	*	Wee
4	LocPlan_TotRetAmt	location plan; total return	Department	*	Location	*	wee
5	LocTgt_TotSIsUnit	location target; total sales	Company	+	Location		Wee
6	LocTgt_TotSIsAmt	location target; total sales	Company	*	Location	*	Wee
7	LocTgt_TotRetUnit	location target; total retur	Company	*	Location	*	Wee
8	LocTgt_TotRetAmt	location target; total retur	Company	*	Locition	9.	Wee
9	MerchPlan_RegPrSIsUnit	merchandise plant regular	Sub Class	w	Area	*	Wee

Figure 11-6 Add Multiple Run Types

Create Run Types

Create Process Id		
Aut hor name "	1	-
	Dia Norma research	
But Type bescription *	-	
	North	ŧ.
Paraulas statius	Galad Longin Cyle +	
1.		
Personal Indexes	Seat Gross Sales Arriso 🔶	
Data Source *	Same Sales	
Annual to Commercing raises	08	
	1.4	
Cultures leginent *		
Formani Is Price Dove	08	
with Date Linus		



# Delete Run Type

Select one or multiple rows in the run type overview table, as shown in Figure 11–4, and click the **X** icon above the table to delete the run types. If a run type is activated or if a run type has a run that is in progress, it cannot be deleted.

gregation levels from the following		
Group-Company-Week	1 Run Types sb	
start the aggregation process for the following list.	the run types that have price zone dimension Inactive Run Type Aggregation Level	n, select the run types
om the following list.	Inactive Run Type	n, select the run types

#### Figure 11-8 Select Aggregation Levels and Run Types

# Test

After the run types are created and aggregation is complete, you can create and submit what-if runs and review the summary of the runs in the Test screen in train stop 2, as shown in Figure 11-9. Performing what-if analysis is an optional step that can help you to tune the various configuration parameters. In addition, you can see the batch runs associated with each run type in this screen.



#### Figure 11-9 Test Screen

	0		0		0		- (4)	
	Setup cast Run Types ons • View • 2	D V 🖸 Detach	Test		Manage		Мар	
	Run Type Name	Run Type Description 0	Status ©	Aggregation Status 0	Forecast Intersection	Applications	C Approved	Estimation
22	MFP_merch_plan		Inactive	Complete	Sub Class-Area-Week		N/A	
5	S8test_LLC		Inactive	Complete	SKU-Location-Week		1061 - Rur	1061
2	SBtest		Active	Complete	SKU-Location-Week	RDF	1080 - Ru	1080
	s for type "SBtest_LLC"	0 × 20	7 12	Detach Appende Dement P	bransters Approx Base D	ienard and Forecast		
	Forecast Run Name	Status C		Estimation Run St.	atus 0 Estin	ation Run 0	Ran Type Name 🗘	Cres
		Setup						oras

In the Test screen, the top table shows all the run types that have complete aggregation. This table shows the same information as the run type table in the Setup screen. The bottom table shows all the what-if runs and batch runs associated with the selected run type in the top table. In addition to Run Name, Created On, Created By and Complete On, the table shows the following information about the run.

#### **Run Status**

The Status column in the run overview table shows the progress of the run by showing the status of the different stages of estimation and forecasting.

- Setup
- Preprocessing in Progress, Preprocessing Failed
- Preprocessing Complete Estimation in Progress, Preprocessing Complete Estimation Failed
- Estimation Complete Base Demand in Progress, Estimation Complete Base Demand Failed, Estimation Complete - Base Demand Complete, Estimation Complete - Base Demand Complete with Zero Rows
- Estimation Complete Forecast Generation in Progress, Estimation Complete Forecast Generation Failed, Estimation Complete - Forecast Generation Complete, Estimation Complete - Forecast Generation Complete with Zero Rows

#### **Estimation Run**

In all forecast methods, the estimation process runs initially to generate the demand parameters such as seasonality and elasticity. Subsequently, the forecast process runs to generate the base demand and the forecast using the outputs from the estimation process. The Estimation Run column shows the name of the estimation run that is behind the forecast run:

#### **Run Type Name**

Each run is associated with a run type. This column shows the name of the run type.



#### Results

This column shows the link to different output screens. The Summary link opens a tab that provides information about the different stages of demand parameter estimation. This link is enabled for all Causal-Short Life Cycle runs for which the estimation process has completed successfully.

### Create What-If Run

To create a what-if run, first select a run type by selecting a row in the top table. Then, click the + (plus) icon in the bottom table to open the Create Run pop-up, as shown in Figure 11-10.



re-processing	icope un Name "	Run Description
leasonality		
Promotion Effects	Run estimation and base demand Run base demand only Select source estimation run	Historical data period for parameter estimation (Latest week of data; 2017-12-31)
Base Demand	No ethnistion tura available	• Between 2015-12-28 🗰 and 2018-07-15 🗰
Review	Run forecast	Forecast horizon in weeks Forecast start date           52         w in in
		Select a date 2018-07-22
		Threshold for auto-approving base demand

The menu on the left shows the different stages of estimation and forecasting. These stages can be different, depending on the forecast method that was selected for the run type.

You can set the scope of the run, the run name, and the description in the first tab. In the left side of the Scope tab, select Run Estimation and Base Demand to execute the end-to-end process for estimating demand parameters and generating base demand. Alternatively, you can select Run Base Demand Only and then select an estimation run from the list of previously completed estimation runs. If no such run exists, this option will be disabled. If the completed estimation run is selected, then the historical data period section will be populated based on the run and will be disabled. To also generate the forecast, turn on Run Forecast. Forecast generation for a price zone run type will always be disabled.

In the right side of the Scope screen, you can select the period of historical data that should be included in the estimation process. This part will be enabled only if Run estimation and base demand is selected. You can either select a period by specifying the start and end date or by specifying the number of weeks to be used from historical data. In the Scope tab, you can also specify the time period for the forecast generation by selecting a start date for forecast period and a forecast horizon. You can also set the threshold used for auto-approving base demand. The base demand values that are less than this threshold times the average rate of historical sales are approved.



In the other tabs on the left menu, you can review and override the configuration parameters for each stage of the estimation and the base demand/forecast. To override a parameter, select the row in the table and click the **Edit** icon above the table. For the Elasticity and Seasonality tabs, you can override the parameters at different levels of merchandise and location, as shown in the following figure. This feature is applicable only for the Causal-Short Life Cycle and the Causal-Long Life Cycle run types. For other tabs, parameters can be overridden only at global level. The levels that are valid for the override depends on the stage, that is, for elasticity and seasonality this is closely tied to escalation levels.

You can click the Add a parameter override button to override parameters at different levels of merchandise and location, as shown in the first of the following three figures. The Active flag allows the user to not use an override temporarily without having to delete it. Once the parameter is overridden at selected intersection, you can add the override at multiple intersections by clicking Save and add another button. This override display in the table is shown in the second of the following three figures. The Base Demand tab override can be performed in three ways: at the global level, at a single merchandise-location parent level, and at the base demand level, which is essentially the aggregation level of the run, as shown in the third of the following three figures.

Override LLC_SEAS	_START_DT				×
Merchandise Level	Company	Okision	Group		
Company	<ul> <li>1-EIT_Company</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>A1</li> </ul>	× 61		1
Location Level	Company	Chaim	Acea		
Chain	<ul> <li>1-EIT_Company</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>SS76-EIT_Chair</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>A)</li> </ul>		1
Description: N/A					
			Save and Add Another	Save	Cancel

Figure 11-11 Override Parameters at the Intersection for Elasticity/Seasonality



#### Figure 11-12 Override Parameters Table

verride LLC_SEAS_START_	DT					,
lobal Value						
015-12-28						
verride at Merchandise/Location I	ntersections					
Actions * View *	0 🗐 🔻 📽 Detach	+Add a parama	ter override			
Merchandise	Location	Override Value	Active	Override Level		
EIT, Company - 43042	Auto_Chain_543 - 7963	2022-05-24		Company-Chain		
			-			
					Save	Cancel

#### Figure 11-13 Override Parameters at the Intersection for Base Demand

Override BD_PERIOD_LEN		,
Global Value	Enter positive integer value	
4. * *		
Override at Merchandise/Location Inter	sections	
There are no overrides added yet.		
+ Add an Override at Intermediate Le	ver + Add an Override at Forecast Level	
		Save Cancel

In the Seasonality tab, in addition to the configuration parameters, you can also modify the escalation path by selecting or unselecting the merchandise-location intersections that will be used during escalation process.

For the Causal-Long Life Cycle runs in the Promotion Effects tab, you can edit the configuration parameters and Algorithm, Partition and Reliability Metrics, as shown in the following figure.

In the Review tab, you can see all the parameters that were overridden and submit the run for the execution.



icope	Promotion Effects							
Pre-processing	<ul> <li>Select features for Model settings</li> </ul>	or the promotion	on lift	estimation m	odel			
Seasonality	Algorithm *	Decision Tree		*	Partition			
Promotion Effects	Maximum depth 0	2	8	^	Brand ×			
Base Demand	Minimum Samples 🔍	10	۷	~	Reliability metrics			
Review					High Percentile 0	0.9	¥	R
					Low Percentile	0.1	~	

#### Figure 11-14 Edit Promotion Effects for LLC Run

For details about different configurations parameters for Causal-Short Life Cycle runs, see the Offer Optimization Forecasting section in the chapter "Offer Optimization" in *Oracle Retail Al Foundation Cloud Services Implementation Guide*.

#### Figure 11-15 Edit Run

28	Strategy & Policy Management					
=	Strategy & Policy Manager	ment × Manage Forecast Configurations ×				
Ø	Edit Run 2317					×
<b>(11-</b> )	Scope	Seasonality				
	Pre-processing	Estimation levels and escalation path     Reset Escalation Paths				
	Seasonality	Available Values		Selected Values		
		Department/Region	**	Department/Area	^	
	Elasticity			Department/Chain		
	Promotion Effects			Group/Region		
			~	Group/Area		
	Base Demand			Group/Chain		
	Review			Division/Region		
				Division/Area		
				LAWSKRY Area		
				Division/Chain		

# **Duplicate Run**

Select a row and click the **Duplicate** icon above the table to create a copy of an existing run. The run will be created in Setup status.

### Delete Run

Select one or multiple rows and click the **X** icon above the table to delete a run or runs. If a run is in progress, it cannot be deleted. For each run selected to be deleted, you see three options: Cancel, Delete Forecast Run and Delete Forecast and Estimation Run. The Delete Forecast Run button deletes the forecast run. The Delete Forecast and Estimation Run button deletes the forecast run and in addition deletes the estimation run that is behind the forecast run. You can perform the Delete Forecast and Estimation Run only when there is no other forecast run tied with same estimation run. For the Automatic Exponential Smoothing



run type, only the Delete Forecast and Estimation Run can be performed, as each forecast run is mapped with a different estimation run.

## Approve Demand Parameters

Select a row and click the Approve Demand Parameters button above the table to approve the estimation runs. You can approve demand parameters only for the runs where the estimation is complete. You can approve another run to replace the previously approved run. Once a run is approved, the Estimation Run column in the below table displays Approved next to the estimation run name. The demand parameters generated by the approved run will be used in weekly forecast batch runs.

### Approve Base Demand and Forecast

Select a row and click the Approve Demand and Forecast Parameters button above the table to approve base demand and forecast runs. Approve Base Demand and Forecast operation can be performed for the runs that has an approved estimation run. Once a run is approved, the Forecast Run Name column in the below table displays Approved besides the forecast run name.

### Manage

In the Manage screen in train stop 3 you can set the value of configuration parameters for the run type. These values will be used when creating and executing batch runs for each run type. In this screen, you can also activate or inactivate run types by selecting a row and clicking the Activate button above the table. Active run types become part of the weekly batch process, and a new batch run is created and executed for each active run type. For each active run type, once the batch run is approved, the output of the batch run will be exported to and consumed by the applications that are mapped to that run type. In order to auto-approve the batch runs, select a row and click on **Manage Auto-approve**. For the Causal-Short Life Cycle run type, the start date calculation can be disabled or enabled by clicking the Disable Life Cycle Start Date Calculation/ Enable Life Cycle Start Date Calculation button, respectively.

To review and override the value of configuration parameters for a run type, select a row and click **Edit Configuration Parameters** above the table. This button will be disabled if the run type is in active status. The Edit configuration pop-up is similar to the Create Run pop-up that is used to create forecast runs and has a tab for each stage of estimation and forecast. In each tab, you can do one of the following, as shown in Figure 11-16.

- Set the values of all configuration parameters in that stage, based on the system default for the run type. To do this, select System Default from the drop-down menu and click **Apply**.
- Set the values of all configuration parameters in that stage based on the values that were previously set in one of the what-if runs. To do this, select the desired run from the drop-down menu and click **Apply**.
- Override the value of a certain configuration parameter. To do this, select a row and click the **Edit** icon above the table.



E	dit Configurations	for Rup Tu	no 783	- Demo for lim					
0	an configurations	ior run ry	pe ros	- Demo tor ann					
	Scope	Pre-	processing	9					
		Seed value	is from	System Default		<ul> <li>Description: System Default</li> </ul>	Apply		
	Pre-processing			System Default			14413		
	Seasonality	Actions	+ Vi	e 1801- review		Detach			
			Parame	2168- Test paramete	er estimation	,	Current Value	System Default Value	
	Elasticity		IF_FRAC	TION_ELIGIBLE_WEEK	Fraction of eligi	ble weeks pct.	0.6	0.6	
	Promotion Effects		F_MIN_	ELIGIBLE_WEEKS	Minimum num	ber of eligible weeks	6	6	
	Base Demand		IF_MIN_	SALES_UNITS	Minimum sales	units	10	10	
	Dase Cemero		IF_MIN_	SEASON_WEEKS	Minimum sease	on (weeks)	6	6	
	Review		IWF_FILT	TER_COMBO	Filter combo		AND	AND	
			WF_HIC	SH_LCYCLE_SELL_PCT	Life cycle sell th	wough pct. (End)	0.002	0.002	
				H_RELATIVE_PRICE	Relative price (8	End)	1.5	1,5	
				_DATA_PRESENT	Inventory data		N	N	
				THRESHOLD	Inventory three		1	t	
				W_LCYCLE_SELL_PCT		rrough pct. (Start)	0.002	0.002	
				W_RELATIVE_PRICE	Relative price (3		0.2	0.2	
				ES_UNIT_THRESHOLD			1	1	
			INVF_SKU	J_STORE_COUNT	Use inventory s	sku store count	N	[ N ]	

#### Figure 11-16 Edit Run Type Configuration

# Мар

In the Map screen in train stop 4, as shown in Figure 11-17, you can map run types to applications. There can be many-to-many mappings between the run types and applications. For example, if Offer Optimization requires a forecast of two different measures (for example, total net sales quantity and total net sales amount), there will be two run types and both must be mapped to Offer Optimization. Also, if two different applications (for example, Offer Optimization) both require a forecast for the same measure and at same intersection, the two application will be mapped to the same run type.

You can select more than one run type at a time to be mapped to an application other than Retail Demand Forecasting, as shown in Figure 11–17.

You can assign an external application key to run the types in this section. An external application run type key value can only be assigned to a run type when the selected application is Retail Demand Forecasting. Two run types that have the exact same prod/loc/cal/forecast measure/data source but opposite life cycles can have the same external application run type key. Basically, for each external application run type key, there can be at most one run type from each life cycle, so at most one Causal-Long Life Cycle run type and at most one Causal-Short Life Cycle run type, and those two run types must have the same prod/loc/cal/forecast measure/data source.

To create a new mapping, click on the + (plus) icon above the table in Map screen. Select an application and a run type from the drop-down menu and click **Save**. To delete a mapping, select a row and click the **X** icon above the table.



#### Figure 11-17 Map Run Type

Retail Demand Forecasting	•	
orecast Run Type		
Grecast Run Type in External Applica	ation	(
		+ Add external run type key

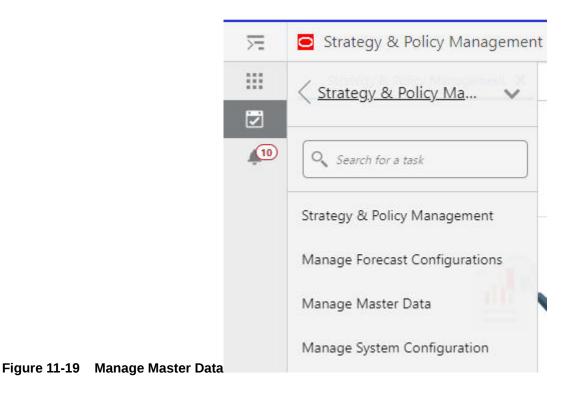
#### Figure 11-18 Providing Additional Map Run Type

oplication	-		
Assortment Planning	•		
ecast Run Type			
LocTgt_TotSIsUnit ×			
LocPlan_TotRetAmt ×			
ecast Run Type in External App	dication		
		EN2	

# Manage Master Data

You can access Manage Master Data from left side Tasks list as shown in the following figure.





In Sales Plans tab, as shown in the following figure, you can select a row and edit the Merchandise Level/Location Level or reset the value to the default levels.

7	Strategy & Policy M	anagement					
	Strategy & Policy Manageme	k Solicy Management X Manage Master Data X					
1	Sales Plan	Sales Plans Revible Groups					
	Product And Location		of Takon				
				Metrhandise Level	Location Level	Channed Ry	Channed On
	Plan Number	Plan Name	Description Week/cmp/location	Merchandise Level	Location Level	Changed 8y	Changed On
	Plan Number		Description	Merchandise Level Company Department	Location Level Location Area	Changed By	Changed On
	Plan Number	Plan Name Location Target	Description Week/cmp/ocation	Company	Location	Changed 8y	Changed On

In the Flexible Groups tab, the Flexible Groups provides for grouping sku/stores based on different criteria. Group Set is the parent (that is, the grouping definition). Partitions are the children (that is, the groups within each group set). As shown in the following figure, you can create a new flexible group set and edit and delete an existing flexible group set. While creating a new flexible group set, you can add a new name (which must be unique), description, and select a run type name from the drop-down list, as shown in the following figure. However, the partitions are provided through the interface. By clicking the icon near group set name, you can see the partitions under it.



gur S	trategy & Policy Management			
trateg	gy & Policy Management X	lanage Master Data 🗙		
	Sales Plans		Flexible Groups	
irou	up Sets			
		X So The Description	≝ <sup>#</sup> Detach	Run Type
	ions • View • +			Run Type SBtest

Figure 11-22 Create Flexible Group Set

Create Flexibl	le Group Set	×
Name * Description		
Run Type *	•	
	Save	Cancel

Once a new flex group set is created, a new entry corresponding to the flex group set will be added to the Available Values section of Estimation Levels and Escalation Path of Seasonality tab in Edit Configuration Parameters, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 11-24 Edit Configurations

cope	~ Estimati	on levels and es	calation	bath			
te-processing	Send values from	3109- Run 3109		Description: Run 3109, created on	22-4	ov-22 Apply	
Sasticity	Available Values Sub Class/Area			6		Selected Values Sub Class/Location	
easonality						Sub Class/Detrict	
romotion Effects				-		Sub Class/Region	
ise Demand				6	e.	Sub Class/Chain	
niew						Sub Class/Company	

When a new What-If run is created under the corresponding run type, the run will also contain the addition escalation levels corresponding to the flex group set and will be displayed in the Available Values section.

# Manage Credential Stores

Oracle Customer Engagement web service-related credentials are managed in the credential stores using the interface shown in Figure 11-25. The administrator can use this screen to configure the name and password. This information is used to generate the authentication key that is sent as part of the message to Oracle Customer Engagement.



Select Credential Store R	elate 👻		
Select Credential Store Map	orac	le.retail.rse	
Select Credential Store Key			
Select credential store ney	orac	ie retail.rse.cis	webservices.relate.cri
Username	*		
Password	*		
Confirm Password	*		
Description			

Figure 11-25 Manage Credential Stores

The Credential Stores dialog box requires the following information:

- Label describes the credential store map and key
- Username user name provided by Oracle Customer Engagement
- Password password provided by Oracle Customer Engagement
- Confirm Password prompt to confirm user password
- Description used by the administrator to describe the credential store used for Customer Segment integration with Oracle Customer Engagement.

# Attribute Extraction and Attribute Binning

For details about the screens of Attribute Extraction, refer to Attribute Extraction.



# 12 Glossary

#### **Assortment Cluster**

Store cluster definitions that are used in Category Manager, which are defined at the product category level.

#### Bay

A physical unit of fixtures in which the configuration is the same from left to right. A fixture configuration can change across bays but not within a bay. Retailers often lay out POGs on a discrete number of bays. Bays can be considered a unit of macro space like linear ft/cm.

#### Capping

Products are stacked with units of different orientation. The bottom unit is in the main orientation, and the units above use a capping orientation. This applies only to shelves. Only simple capping is supported.

#### **Current/Historical POG Assortment**

The list of products from a specific POG that is imported from a third-party POG tool. This assortment is POG-specific; the stores that received this POG have this assortment. A master list for a POG set can be created by finding the union of all products that are on the POGs in the set.

#### Display Style, Display Style Type

This provides the discrete unit of display for a given product. Display style types include single/unit, tray, case, and pallet. Display style types can also describe peg vs. shelf. These are set up in MSM.

For a given product, one or more display styles is established in MSM. Each one has its own set of size and spacing data, as well as the number of total units. For example, a specific SKU may have two display styles: single/unit and tray. Unit then corresponds to a single unit of the product. Tray is then 12 units. The number of units per tray depends on the product.

Note that MSM uses the term unit for a single unit display. In order to describe the number of units, ASO uses the term single/unit instead.



#### **Empty Planogram**

An empty POG is a POG skeleton. The bays and fixtures are defined but no products have been placed on the fixtures.

#### Facing

A facing is the smallest unit of micro space that is allocated to a product. On a shelf, facings are counted horizontally. In other words, it is the number of units across. On a pegboard or a freezer, facings are the number of total units that the customer can see when looking at the fixture.

#### **Finalized Assortment**

This is the final approved assortment.

#### **Finger Space Above**

The product-specific space that is required between the top of a product's facings and the bottom of the shelf above. This accounts for the space required to remove the product from the fixture. When available, the specified space is added to the top of the top unit in the product's facings in the *z* direction. This applies to pegboards, freezer chests, and shelves. In MSM, this is also called finger space above.

#### **Finger Space Behind**

The product-specific space that is required on the front and back of units of a product. When available, the specified space is added on either side of the unit in the y direction; half of the quantity goes on the front and half of the quantity goes on the back. This applies to shelves only. In MSM, this is called a gap in the y direction.

#### **Finger Space Beside**

The product-specific space that is required on the left side and right side of units of a product. When available, the specified space is added on either side of the product's facings; half of the quantity goes on either side in the *x* direction. For example, if there are two facings of product A with finger space beside equal to 1 inch, then horizontally it looks as follows: one-half inch, product A, one-half inch, one-half inch, product A, one-half inch. This applies to pegboards, freezer chests, and shelves. In MSM, this quantity is called a gap in the *x* direction.

#### Fixture

A fixture is defined as equipment such as a set of shelves, a pegboard, or a freezer chest. A single shelf is not a fixture, nor is a single peg a fixture.

#### **Fixture Configuration**

This provides details about the dimensions of shelving (that is, the number of shelves and the height, width, and depth of each one), freezer chests (that is, the height, width,



and depth) or pegboard (in this case, the height, width, and depth equal the peg length, which may also have peg hole spacing details).

#### **Fixture Type**

This is the attribute that defines what kind of fixture is in a POG: shelf, pegboard, or freezer chest.

#### Inter Product Gap

The product-specific space that is required to separate adjacent products on a shelf. This accounts for space that holds product dividers. When available, the specified space is added to the left and right of the entire block of a product; half of the quantity goes on either side of the run of that product in the *x* direction. For example, if there are two facings of product A with inter product gap equal to 1 inch, then horizontally it looks as follows: one-half inch, product A, product A, one-half inch. This applies to pegboards, freezer chests, and shelves. In MSM, this is called finger space beside.

#### Item Performance Index (IPI)

This is a value generated by Category Manager that provides indication of the relative importance of products within an assortment. A value of 1 means the product is average, a value of 1.3 means it is 130% of average, and a value of 0.5 means it is 50% of average. ASO uses these values optionally as attributes or weights in the optimization objective function.

#### Mandatory Items

These are items from the preliminary assortment that cannot be dropped.

#### **Optimization Level**

This is the location level for micro-optimization runs and is set for a specific optimization run. The options are cluster or store.

#### **Optimization Location**

This is a specific location node defined for optimization. It can be a store or a store cluster.

#### Order Point (OP) and Order Up to Level (OUTL)

These are proxies for the replenishment triggers and are used in the inventory and sales model. These values are not directly input from the client feeds, but are calculated from theinput data.

#### Orientation, Legal Orientation, Default Orientation

This describes how a product's package faces the front of the fixture. The orientation has two pieces of information, the part of the package that is to the front (front, back, top, bottom, left,



right) and how it is rotated in degrees (0, 90, 180, 270), for a total of 24 possible orientations. How a product is oriented determines how much space it takes in the x,y,z directions on a fixture.

Legal orientations are all orientations that can be used for the product.

The default orientation is the legal orientation that is normally used for the product.

#### Planogram (POG)

The layout of product on shelves or pegboards, which has an underlying fixture assumption (for example, number of shelves or overall size).

A third-party POG typically includes a visual depiction of the product layout with images. POGs are the underlying data and not the pictures.

#### Planogram (POG) set

Current and historical POGs in the same POG category or subcategory and with the same seasonal attribute.

#### Preliminary Category Manager Assortment

A product list created in Category Manager by product category, this varies by assortment cluster. The preliminary assortment is a list of products that are eligible. A preliminary assortment has a master list that is the union of all the cluster-specific preliminary assortments.

Preliminary assortments from Category Manager are forward looking and can include new products or new product assignments and store assignments.

#### POG Sub-Category, POG Category, POG Department

These are levels on the POG hierarchy and are used to organize POGs. For example, the leaf to root path in the POG hierarchy is Grocery -> Crisps and Snacks -> Crackers.

#### **Product Stacking Height Limit**

This defines a product-specific limit on how high a given product can be stacked or nested in the *y* direction on any shelf. This applies only to shelves.

#### Receive Up-To Level (RUTL)

This denotes the target level of inventory when an order is generated. It is calculated differently based on the replenishment method.



#### **Re-Order Point (RP)**

This represents the inventory level below which an order must be triggered. It is calculated differently based on the replenishment method.

#### **Replenishment Policy**

The replenishment policy for each sku-location is characterized by the two parameters: RP and RUTL, calculated for that sku-location.

#### Safety Stock

The inventory held at a location to mitigate the risks of stockouts caused by variability in forecasted demand. It is calculated differently based on the replenishment method.

#### Season/Seasonal Attribute

This refers to a specific year-independent time period for a Category Manager assortment and a POG set. Examples include spring, holiday, back to school, and year-round.

#### Sell-Through

This is calculated as the ratio between the historical sales (of the past weeks) and the sum of the historical sales (of the past weeks) and forecast sales (of the future weeks). Future weeks are the weeks until the end of the current season or the end of the life cycle of the sku-store, whichever is earlier.

#### Service Level

This is defined as the percentage of time that the stock must be able to meet demand. The service level is used in the safety stock calculations for the Dynamic and Poisson replenishment methods.

#### **Smart Start Process**

The Smart Start Process (SSP) is a back-end process that assigns shelves to a Partial Shelf Fixture Planogram (PSFP), based on a combination of default values, user selections, and algorithms. SSP supports one or more algorithms that add shelves to PSFPs only. SSP does not perform fixture optimization.

#### Space Optimized Assortment

This is the product list after products have been dropped because of limited space. This varies by optimization location.

#### Stacking/Nesting, Nesting Height

Multiple units of a product can be stacked on top of one another in the *y* direction on a specific facing on a shelf. When the units are stacked, the total height equals the number of



units x the height of a single unit. Nesting is defined as stacked units that fit inside each other so that the total height is less than the number of units x the height of a single unit. The nesting height is the incremental space that the nested units require. The total height of a facing with nested units is determined as follows: total height equals the height of a single unit + the number of nested units x the nesting height. This applies only to shelves.

#### **Top Shelf Stacking Height Limit**

This defines the limit on how high products can be stacked or nested on the top shelf in the *y* direction. This is not required for intermediate shelves in a fixture because of the physical limit created by the shelf above. This applies only to shelves.

#### Units of Measure and Currency

This document will use "ft/cm" when talking about units of space, and will use "value" when talking about currency

#### Virtual Planogram (VPOG)

This refers to a POG that was created by ASO.

